IELTS Course

初级上

雅思标准教程

主编 刘薇

结合评分标准，全面培养核心语言能力

解读常考主题，剖析各大题型命题特点

练习契合考点，强化雅思四科解题技能

Listening Reading Writing Speaking

外语教学与研究出版社
FOREIGN LANGUAGE TEACHING AND RESEARCH PRESS

扫码获取配套音频
下载方式见封底

IELTS Course

初级上

雅思标准教程

主编 刘薇

外语教学与研究出版社
FOREIGN LANGUAGE TEACHING AND RESEARCH PRESS
北京 BEIJING

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

雅思标准教程：初级. 上 / 刘薇主编. -- 北京：外语教学与研究出版社，2022.12（2023.5 重印）
ISBN 978-7-5213-4134-8

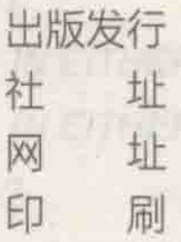
Ⅰ. ①雅… Ⅱ. ①刘… Ⅲ. ①IELTS－自学参考资料 Ⅳ. ①H310.41

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2022）第 232893 号

出 版 人　王　芳
项目策划　刘　旭
责任编辑　许圆圆
责任校对　王　晶
封面设计　李　高
出版发行　外语教学与研究出版社
社　　址　北京市西三环北路 19 号（100089）
网　　址　https://www.fltrp.com
印　　刷　三河市北燕印装有限公司
开　　本　889×1194　1/16
印　　张　14
版　　次　2023 年 1 月第 1 版　2023 年 5 月第 3 次印刷
书　　号　ISBN 978-7-5213-4134-8
定　　价　56.00 元

如有图书采购需求，图书内容或印刷装订等问题，侵权、盗版书籍等线索，请拨打以下电话或关注官方服务号：
客服电话：400 898 7008
官方服务号：微信搜索并关注公众号“外研社官方服务号”
外研社购书网址：https://fltrp.tmall.com

物料号：341340001



记载人类文明
沟通世界文化
www.fltrp.com

编委会

总 策 划 刘 薇

项目策划 赵 健 杨崇圣 刘炜丽 楚梁梁

委　　员 刘丹妮 李 超 王 铎 张罗曼
尹星钰 王 娟 赵紫燕 罗 晖
韦蕴珂 Tim Williams

编写说明

教程总体介绍

“雅思标准教程”依据广大雅思考生备考雅思的实际需求而编写。本教程充分研究雅思考试所需的底层能力，从听、说、读、写四个方面，全面培养考生对英语的掌握和运用能力，力图以科学的教学理念和学习方法为备考雅思提供指导。

本教程共分为四个级别，每个级别包括上下两册，每册含 5 个学习单元。本教程既可用于自学备考，也适合在针对雅思考试的辅导课堂上使用。

教程主要特点

1. 设计思路注重英语能力培养

雅思考试重在考查考生的英语运用能力，注重语言能力和在语境中的应用。因此，本教程全面覆盖英语学习中的各项技能，每个单元均设置听、读、说、写四个板块，全面提升考生的语言技能。为使考生进一步掌握并检测所学技能，每个单元都配有与雅思考试题型直接相关的练习。各单元的听力原文和阅读篇章均选自英文原版材料，语言准确地道。

2. 内容编排采用讲练结合的形式

只有讲解的雅思备考无法帮助考生有效掌握知识点，而一味地练习则缺乏系统性且枯燥乏味。因此，本教程将知识点讲解与题目练习相结合，一方面有针对性地讲解雅思听、读、说、写四个科目必备的知识点和雅思各个题型的解题技巧，另一方面使用雅思考试中用得到的语料和题型进行巩固强化，让考生充分吸收所学内容。

3. 教程内容紧密结合雅思考试

本教程结合雅思听、说、读、写各科目的评分标准，有针对性地培养考试相关的语言能力。在口语和写作板块，将评分标准中抽象的要点具体化，突出强调考官在评分时希望听到或看到的要点，指导考生避开陷阱和误区。听力、阅读的输入与口语、写作的输出同步并进，逐步提升考生在英语语言运用方面的薄弱项，使考生在备考阶段不盲目，有的放矢，从而高效备考。

4. 阶段性复习巩固强化知识点

本教程在能力培养和题型讲解部分循序渐进，在一系列知识点讲解后进行阶段性回顾总结，巩固强化所学知识点。这样既能给尚未完全掌握的考生提供消化的时间，也能帮助已经掌握知识点的考生加强记忆、促进提升，起到承前启后的作用。

5. 难度设计合理

本教程在难度设计上充分考虑到目标对象的接受能力，各个单元的难度由基础到强化逐步提升，使考生逐渐适应雅思考试的难度要求，同时又不给学习过程增加太大压力。词汇基础部分以简单的练习引出与单元话题有关的基础词汇，课后练习中则补充难度稍高的练习，以满足不同考生的难度需求，并为进一步巩固提升做准备。听、读、说、写四个科目内容在难度上基本保持一致，但由于雅思考试本身对于这四项能力的要求有所不同，比如：阅读对词汇量的要求较高，而口语则相对较低。因此，四科之间在词汇和语法的难度上存在差异。

单元结构

Listening

词汇基础

该部分包含 3~4 个词汇练习，题型多样，并具备一定的趣味性，可以激发考生的学习兴趣，帮助考生熟悉场景词汇及单元主题相关词汇。“场景词汇”部分罗列了与主题相关的词汇，以及本单元所讲场景中常见的听力词汇，帮助考生在熟悉场景词汇的基础上提高听力的反应能力。

能力培养

预备级着重培养考生对于听力基础技能的熟悉和掌握，如基础信息的抓取、点听、影子跟读、速记等。初级强调考生能够将预备级中学到的听力基础技能和练习方法运用到较难的题型中，同时掌握较难题型（包括中等难度的表格题、选择题和更高难度的多选题、匹配题、地图题以及流程图题等）的解题方法。因此，在初级中，听力基础技能和较难题型讲解会穿插出现，这种编排既能帮助考生有效复习之前所学的知识点，又使他们有余力吸收新的知识点。此外，本部分还包含 3~4 个相关练习，题目融合了之前所学的知识点，检测考生是否掌握了相应的能力。预备级和初级覆盖了所有需要培养的听力基础能力和雅思听力各种题型的讲解，在难度上逐步进阶。

题型讲解

预备级主要讲解个人信息填空题，着重考查基础信息内容，包括数字、人名、国家、地点等常见的基础信息。Unit 1 重点讲解该题型，其余单元结合主题讲解雅思听力考试的高频生活场景。讲解之后设置 2 个练习，与雅思听力 Part 1 的考查范围相似，难度较低，帮助学生奠定听力学习的基础。初级涉及其他听力题型，讲解更难的雅思听力考试学科场景，必要时添加关于解题细节的 Tips。讲解之后设置 2 个练习，结合高频场景和能力培养中的技能进行综合考查，难度更加接近雅思真题，属于雅思听力 Part 2 和 Part 3 的考查范围。

课后练习

该部分包含 3~5 个练习，分别对本单元听力部分所学的词汇、能力和题型进行巩固强化，难度递增。预备级中包含至少 1 个雅思听力题型和场景练习，通常为 5 空的填空题，此外还设有趣味性题目，以激发考生的英语学习兴趣。初级包含 1~2 个 10 题以内的雅思听力题型和场景练习，主要检测考生对听力技能和较难题型的综合掌握，此外还设有开放性题目，帮助考生理解不同题型的做题方法。

Reading

词汇基础

该部分包含 4 个练习，可分为两部分，前半部分侧重生词辨析、分类与搭配，后半部分侧重考查单词在文章中的具体运用。题目设置由易到难，从单词到句子、篇章，从三个不同维度，多方位地帮助考生熟悉和积累每个单元的主题相关词汇。“主题词汇”中为考生罗列出常用的单词和短语，尽可能拓展考生对于相关主题的认知词汇量。

能力培养

该部分讲解 1~3 个阅读技能，并通过阅读任务使考生深刻理解所学技能。与雅思阅读文章相比，该部分文章长度稍短，难度与雅思 A 类文章接近。从预备级到初级，文章的长度和难度会相应递增，帮助考生适应考试难度。预备级从文章的基本特征、阅读方法、速读技巧、概括能力等方面切入，逐步培养考生英语阅读的基本能力。初级则强调英语阅读进阶能力的掌握，从文章体裁特征、信息抓取能力、生词应对方法以及文章逻辑结构等方面提高阅读的实战技巧。每 4 个单元后设有 1 个总结单元，对此前学习的技能进行复习与巩固。

题型讲解

该部分着重讲解雅思阅读考试中的题型，通过不同的阅读任务帮助考生逐步掌握解答该题型所需的各项能力。最后 1 个任务的题目要求与雅思阅读考试中该题型的要求保持一致。本部分文章长度比雅思 A 类文章稍短，文章难度相当。预备级包括简答题、完成句子题、摘要题、笔记题、填图题、表格题和流程图题七大类。初级包括匹配题、判断题、选择题和小标题匹配题四大类。各类题型的难度从预备级到初级逐步增加，每个级别的最后 1 个单元对前 9 个单元进行总结复习。

课后练习

该部分包含 1 篇阅读文章，针对各单元的“题型讲解”部分设置相对应的题型，帮助考生对本单元所学内容进行巩固强化。文章难度与雅思 A 类阅读文章相当，长度稍短。每个级别的最后 1 个单元设置 1 组雅思阅读的标准题型，即 1 篇文章设置 2~3 个题型，总共 13 题，使考生能够完整体验雅思阅读考试的解题过程。

Speaking

词汇基础

该部分针对雅思口语评分标准中的“词汇多样性”一项进行设计，包含 2 个词汇练习。练习

形式丰富，包括匹配题、填空题、分类题、描述题等，帮助考生熟悉贴近单元主题的雅思口语常用词汇及日常口语必备词汇，提高考生对话题词汇的认知与分辨能力，增强记忆效果。在词汇难度上，初级较预备级有所上升，以期满足不同能力阶段考生的实际需求。

能力培养

该部分针对雅思口语评分标准中的“语法多样性及准确性”和“发音”两项进行设计，包含对语法和发音两方面能力的培养。语法方面，选取口语中使用频率较高的语法类型，从预备级到初级难度逐渐上升，从对词性、时态及相关用法的讲解过渡到语态、句型和从句讲解，例句及练习大多为与单元话题相关的口语语料，帮助考生在理解和掌握口语重点语法的基础上，积累更多话题表达。语法讲解后设有练习，训练考生遣词造句的基本能力。初级的练习部分加入图片描述题，要求考生运用积累的词汇和语法描述图片，鼓励考生化被动吸收知识为主动开口表达。在发音方面，预备级由字母 A 到 Z 串讲字母及字母组合的发音示范，尽量避开复杂的国际音标体系的学习，从实用角度跟读模仿标准英式英语发音。初级着重讲解语音现象，通过对连读、弱读、不完全爆破、语调等的讲解，实现考生在语音方面的精进。预备级和初级发音部分的例句均为本单元话题的相关语料，为考生的话题描述拓展素材。

话题讲解

该部分针对雅思口语评分标准中的“流利度与连贯性”和“词汇多样性”两项进行设计，通过对精选的雅思口语高频真题进行集中分析与讲解，帮助考生学会审题、拓展思路，在积累相关词汇句型和优质语料的基础上主动描述话题。“考题重现”部分罗列了单元话题下的雅思口语高频真题，为考生展示问题的形式和考查方向。“高分语料”部分给出与话题相关的答题角度，旨在帮助考生积累丰富的素材和句式，拓展答题的思路。预备级每单元讲解 2 个雅思口语 Part 1 精选话题，初级每单元讲解 1 个 Part 1 精选话题和 1 个 Part 2 精选话题。

课后练习

该部分针对雅思口语评分标准中的“流利性与连贯性”和“词汇多样性”两项进行设计，包含 2 个练习，对本单元重点培养的能力和话题描述进行巩固强化，以期满足考生的进阶需求。练习 1 的题型包括填空题、选择题、匹配题、句子改写题和描述题等，初级较预备级在难度上有所提升，描述题比例增加；练习 2 为开放性描述题，选取难度较高的雅思口语 Part 1 和 Part 2 真题，鼓励考生灵活运用本单元所学内容，进行口语考试的模拟练习。

Writing

词汇基础

预备级包含 3 个词汇练习；初级包含 2 个词汇练习。预备级的题型多样，包括选择题、填空题、匹配题等；初级的题型则多为拼写题和填空题，更加侧重文章结构布局讲解。本部分的词汇练习以基础词汇、单元主题相关词汇为重点，帮助考生快速了解话题。

能力培养

该部分针对雅思写作中的“语法多样性及准确性”“词汇多样性”“连贯与衔接”三项进行设计。预备级包含 4 个维度的能力培养，即书写规范、词汇表达、语法重点和衔接方式；初级包含 3 个维度的能力培养，即词汇表达、语法重点和衔接方式。讲解之后设置练习，用于检测学习成果。本部分使用的例句大多为与单元话题相关的写作语料。

书写规范部分列出了考生易犯的书写错误，涉及写作风格、语域、标点等。

词汇表达部分列出主题相关词汇，难度逐步进阶，预备级的前 5 个单元以主题单词为主，后 5 个单元以与主题相关的写作考点短语为主；初级则以与主题相关的核心单词及其派生词、常用写作考点短语和例句为主。

语法重点部分讲解考生在写作过程中必须掌握的语法规则，预备级侧重词性讲解，初级侧重简单句型讲解。

衔接方式部分讲解写作中常见的衔接词和逻辑关系词的用法，每个级别均在最后 1 个单元对前 9 个单元所学的衔接方式进行回顾和复习。

题型讲解

该部分参照雅思考试的写作题型包括大作文（Task 2）和小作文（Task 1）两部分。

大作文部分的话题与单元主题密切相关，所选取的大部分题目都是雅思考试真题。预备级主要讲解根据题目可以拓展的观点论据及可以用到的词汇和例句，初级则侧重讲解文章结构的搭

建、段落组织、每个段落中句子的作用等。讲解之后均设有相应的练习，预备级侧重训练考生遣词造句的能力，初级侧重训练考生组织段落的能力。

小作文部分讲解了 7 种图表类型，按照图表题目的难度和考试频率，每个级别都包含各 2 个单元的曲线图题、表格题、柱状图题和各 1 个单元的饼状图题、混合图题、流程图题和地图题，所有题目均贴合单元话题。预备级侧重词汇及句式表达的讲解和练习，初级则侧重文章结构及段落划分的讲解和练习。

课后练习

该部分包含 3 个练习，既包括与大作文和小作文题型相关的练习，也有对本单元所学能力进行巩固强化的练习。本部分的练习难度稍高，与之前的练习形成互补，以满足考生的进阶需求。预备级侧重词汇和句子表达的练习，初级的练习包括词汇、句子和文章，小作文练习大多以完整文章的形式呈现。

学术类（A 类）雅思考试概述

雅思考试分为四门科目：听力、阅读、口语和写作。考试时间共计约 2 小时 44 分钟。听力、阅读和写作测试必须在 1 天之内完成，口语测试可根据考试中心的安排在其他各项测试之前或之后的 7 天内完成。每一科目都独立评分，综合得分取四门科目的平均分。雅思成绩单上将列出考生每一科目的得分以及综合得分。雅思考试满分为 9 分。成绩有效期为 2 年。

听力

听力考试时长约为 30 分钟，另有 10 分钟用于誊写答案。录音只播放 1 遍，但题目之间会留给考生读题和记录答案的时间。考生将听到不同的英语口音和方言。一共有 4 段录音，第 1 段（Part 1）为两人对话（如关于旅行安排的对话），第 2 段（Part 2）为独白（如介绍博物馆开放时间的独白），第 3 段（Part 3）为 2~4 人的对话（如老师和学生关于作业的讨论），第 4 段（Part 4）为独白（如一般学术话题的讲座）。每段录音设置 10 道题目，考查难度一般来说逐步增加。问题的排列顺序和答案在录音中出现的顺序一致。4 段录音中，前 2 段为日常生活场景，后 2 段基于校园和学术场景展开。

阅读

阅读考试时长为 60 分钟，共有 3 篇文章，40 道题目。每篇文章设置的问题数量并不相同。阅读考试中所出现的文章是由真实的文章改写而成的。这些文章来源于诸如杂志、书籍和报纸等途径，与考生未来在大学课程中将阅读到的文章极为相似。文章的写作方式多样，包含记叙文、说明文、议论文等文体。文章的内容包含即将学习本科、研究生课程或进行职业注册的考生所感兴趣的、与其认知程度相符的常见话题。其中，至少 1 篇文章会出现详尽的论述形式。所有文章总计长度约在 2,000 到 2,750 词之间。

写作

写作考试时长为60分钟，包括小作文（Task 1）和大作文（Task 2）。Task 1 要求考生根据给出的数据图形、地图或者流程图写 1 篇至少 150 词的文章，考查考生描述、分析和比较数据，以及总结图形主要特征和要点的能力，建议用时 20 分钟。Task 2 要求考生针对某个问题或观点写 1 篇至少 250 词的文章，考查考生使用恰当语体及语域（包括词汇、语法等）讨论问题并加以论证的能力，建议用时 40 分钟。

口语

口语考试时长为 11~14 分钟。考试采用一对一的面试形式，考查考生日常会话、对熟悉话题作一定长度的描述以及与考官之间互动的能力。口语考试分为 3 个部分：第 1 部分（Part 1）为简介及问答，主要考查考生在英语语境中对日常生活中耳熟能详的话题的表达能力；第 2 部分（Part 2）为个人陈述，考官会交给考生 1 张任务卡，卡片上给出 1 个话题和需要陈述的要点，考生根据卡片进行 1~2 分钟的陈述，考官会在最后提问 1~2 个问题；第 3 部分（Part 3）则是根据前 2 个部分的表现，由考官适当提一些更深层次的问题。

Map of the book

	Listening		Reading	
Unit 1 Daily Necessities	1 词汇基础 / 001 2 能力培养 / 002 2.1 语音现象 / 002 2.2 英语口音 / 003 2.3 巩固练习 / 004	3 题型讲解 / 005 3.1 高频场景 / 005 3.2 题型演练 / 006 4 课后练习 / 006	1 词汇基础 / 008 2 能力培养 / 010 说明性文章	3 题型讲解 / 015 特征匹配题 4 课后练习 / 018
Unit 2 Parenting and Schooling	1 词汇基础 / 042 2 能力培养 / 044 2.1 了解表格填空题 / 044 2.2 解题步骤 / 044 2.3 巩固练习 / 044	3 题型讲解 / 045 3.1 高频场景 / 045 3.2 题型演练 / 045 4 课后练习 / 046	1 词汇基础 / 047 2 能力培养 / 049 定位和辨别事实信息	3 题型讲解 / 053 分类匹配题 4 课后练习 / 057
Unit 3 Keeping Fit	1 词汇基础 / 081 2 能力培养 / 083 2.1 了解单项选择题 / 083 2.2 解题步骤 / 083 2.3 巩固练习 / 083	3 题型讲解 / 084 3.1 高频场景 / 084 3.2 题型演练 / 084 4 课后练习 / 085	1 词汇基础 / 087 2 能力培养 / 089 议论性文章	3 题型讲解 / 093 段落信息配对题 4 课后练习 / 096
Unit 4 Media and Advertising	1 词汇基础 / 119 2 能力培养 / 121 2.1 大小写规范 / 121 2.2 巩固练习 / 121	3 题型讲解 / 123 3.1 高频场景 / 123 3.2 题型演练 / 123 4 课后练习 / 124	1 词汇基础 / 126 2 能力培养 / 128 辨别文章的主要观点	3 题型讲解 / 132 判断题（TRUE / FALSE / NOT GIVEN 4 课后练习 / 135
Unit 5 Science and Technology	1 词汇基础 / 155 2 能力培养 / 156 2.1 了解多项选择题 / 156 2.2 解题步骤 / 157 2.3 巩固练习 / 157	3 题型讲解 / 159 3.1 高频场景 / 159 3.2 题型演练 / 159 4 课后练习 / 161	1 词汇基础 / 163 2 能力培养 / 165 小结	3 题型讲解 / 169 判断题（YES / NO / NOT GIVEN） 4 课后练习 / 171
Audio Scripts	193~204			
Answers	205~213			

Speaking

1 词汇基础 / 021

2 能力培养 / 022

2.1 语法训练——被动语态 / 022

2.2 发音训练——单词的省音现象 1 / 023

3 话题讲解 / 025

3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——住所 / 025

3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——物品 / 026

4 课后练习 / 028

1 词汇基础 / 059

2 能力培养 / 059

2.1 语法训练——虚拟语气 / 059

2.2 发音训练——单词的省音现象 2 / 062

3 话题讲解 / 063

3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——家人 / 063

3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——人物 / 065

4 课后练习 / 067

1 词汇基础 / 099

2 能力培养 / 099

2.1 语法训练——现在分词和过去分词 / 099

2.2 发音训练——连读 / 102

3 话题讲解 / 103

3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——健康 / 103

3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——运动 / 104

4 课后练习 / 106

1 词汇基础 / 137

2 能力培养 / 137

2.1 语法训练——形容词比较级和最高级的特殊用法 / 137

2.2 发音训练——不完全爆破 1 / 139

3 话题讲解 / 140

3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——广告 / 140

3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——媒体 / 141

4 课后练习 / 143

1 词汇基础 / 174

2 能力培养 / 174

2.1 语法训练——插入语 / 174

2.2 发音训练——不完全爆破 2 / 176

3 话题讲解 / 177

3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——科技 / 177

3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——科技 / 178

4 课后练习 / 180

Writing

1 词汇基础 / 029

2 能力培养 / 029

2.1 词汇表达 / 029

核心单词及其派生词；常用短语；写作例句

2.2 语法重点 / 031

句子成分；句子结构分析

2.3 衔接方式 / 033

meanwhile; similarly; furthermore; specifically; nevertheless; overall

3 题型讲解 / 035

3.1 家庭生活类话题 / 035

3.2 曲线图 1 / 037

4 课后练习 / 040

1 词汇基础 / 068

2 能力培养 / 068

2.1 词汇表达 / 068

核心单词及其派生词；常用短语；写作例句

2.2 语法重点 / 070

主谓句型；主系表句型

2.3 衔接方式 / 072

as far as...goes / as far as...is concerned; until; lest; whether; hence; on condition that

3 题型讲解 / 074

3.1 教育类话题 / 074

3.2 曲线图 2 / 076

4 课后练习 / 079

1 词汇基础 / 107

2 能力培养 / 108

2.1 词汇表达 / 108

核心单词及其派生词；常用短语；写作例句

2.2 语法重点 / 109

主谓宾句型；主谓双宾句型

2.3 衔接方式 / 112

as well as; in conclusion; more importantly; in turn; nonetheless; only if

3 题型讲解 / 113

3.1 运动娱乐类话题 / 113

3.2 表格 1 / 115

4 课后练习 / 117

1 词汇基础 / 144

2 能力培养 / 144

2.1 词汇表达 / 144

核心单词及其派生词；常用短语；写作例句

2.2 语法重点 / 146

主谓宾补句型

2.3 衔接方式 / 147

except; to some extent; regardless of; such as; apart from; no matter who / where / what / how

3 题型讲解 / 149

3.1 媒体类话题 / 149

3.2 表格 2 / 151

4 课后练习 / 153

1 词汇基础 / 181

2 能力培养 / 181

2.1 词汇表达 / 181

核心单词及其派生词；常用短语；写作例句

2.2 语法重点 / 183

五种基本句型总结

2.3 衔接方式 / 185

personally; in my opinion; for my part; from my perspective; from my point of view; I firmly believe that...

3 题型讲解 / 186

3.1 科技类话题 / 186

3.2 柱状图 1 / 189

4 课后练习 / 191

Unit 1 Daily Necessities

Listening

1 词汇基础

1.1 请听一段对话，选出说话人购物时会考虑的因素。

A brand　B comfort　C low price　D colour　E fashion　F material

Mike	Amanda

1.2 请听一段对话，圈出你听到的食物和饮料名称。

stake	vegetable	soup	fruit	beef	toast
cheese	ham	coffee	juice	cake	wine

1.3 请听四段对话，判断每段对话发生的地点，并从方框中选择正确的单词或短语填入空白处。

restaurant　supermarket　sports store　bookstore

1 _____　2 _____　3 _____　4 _____

1.4 请听一段对话，并根据对话将以下物品分类。

food　clothes　mobile phone　house　furniture　vehicles　shoes　water

Daily necessities	Other goods

场景词汇

shopping /'ʃɒpɪŋ/ *n.* 购物
mall /mɔ:l/ *n.* 购物中心
store /stɔ:(r)/ *n.* 商店
receptionist /rɪ'sepʃənɪst/ *n.* 接待员
cosmetics /kɒz'metɪks/ *n.* 化妆品
drink /drɪŋk/ *n.* 饮料
coffee /'kɒfi/ *n.* 咖啡
water /'wɔ:tə(r)/ *n.* 水
tea /ti:/ *n.* 茶
black tea 红茶
green tea 绿茶
mineral water 矿泉水
milk /mɪlk/ *n.* 牛奶
juice /dʒu:s/ *n.* 果汁
fish /fɪʃ/ *n.* 鱼
dish /dɪʃ/ *n.* 菜肴
beef /bi:f/ *n.* 牛肉
seafood /'si:fu:d/ *n.* 海鲜
toast /təʊst/ *n.* 吐司
vegetable /'vedʒtəbl/ *n.* 蔬菜
pizza /'pi:tsə/ *n.* 比萨饼
flour /'flaʊə(r)/ *n.* 面粉
snack /snæk/ *n.* 小吃
salad /'sæləd/ *n.* 色拉
soup /su:p/ *n.* 汤
mushroom /'mʌʃrʊm/ *n.* 蘑菇
sandwich /'sænwɪtʃ/ *n.* 三明治
hamburger /'hæmbɜ:gə(r)/ *n.* 汉堡包
hot dog 热狗
chocolate /'tʃɒklət/ *n.* 巧克力
cheese /tʃi:z/ *n.* 奶酪
fruit /fru:t/ *n.* 水果
dairy products 乳制品
salt /sɔ:lt/ *n.* 盐
bitter /'bɪtə(r)/ *adj.* 苦的
sweet /swi:t/ *adj.* 甜的
delicious /dɪ'lɪʃəs/ *adj.* 可口的
comfort /'kʌmfət/ *n.* 舒适
material /mə'tɪəriəl/ *n.* 材料
brand /brænd/ *n.* 品牌
consumer /kən'sju:mə(r)/ *n.* 消费者
insurance /ɪn'ʃʊərəns/ *n.* 保险
curtain /'kɜ:tn/ *n.* 窗帘
household /'haʊshəʊld/ *adj.* 家庭的
furniture /'fɜ:nɪtʃə(r)/ *n.* 家具

2 能力培养

2.1 语音现象

❶ 失去爆破或不完全爆破

英语中的爆破音有/p/, /b/, /t/, /d/, /k/, /g/；摩擦音有/f/, /v/, /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /ʒ/, /θ/, /ð/, /r/, /h/；破擦音有/tʃ/, /dʒ/, /tr/, /dr/, /ts/, /dz/；鼻辅音有/m/, /n/, /ŋ/；舌边音有/l/。当一个爆破音后面紧跟爆破音、摩擦音、破擦音、鼻辅音或舌边音时，就会发生失去爆破或不完全爆破现象。

爆破音 + 爆破音

当两个爆破音相遇时，会发生失去爆破现象，即前一个爆破音只做发声的样子，保留口形，稍停顿就发出第二个爆破音。

- doctor /'dɒktə/　　feedback /'fi:dbæk/　　basketball /'bɑ:skɪtbɔ:l/

爆破音 + 摩擦音或破擦音

当爆破音后跟摩擦音或破擦音时，前面的爆破音会发生不完全爆破现象，即只能听到极轻微的爆破音。发出声音的主要是后面的摩擦音或破擦音。

- picture /'pɪktʃə/　　absent /'æbsənt/　　object /'ɒbdʒɪkt/

爆破音 + 鼻辅音或舌边音

当爆破音后跟鼻辅音或舌边音时，也会发生不完全爆破现象。

- partner /'pɑ:tnə/　　what next /wɒt nekst/　　at lunch /ət lʌntʃ/

❷ 连读

在同一意群内，一个单词的末尾经常与下一个单词的开头连起来读，由一个音自然地向另一个音滑动，中间不能有停顿，我们把这种现象称为“连读”。

- spell it　　side effect　　bank account
- try again　　very interesting　　far away

❸ 音的同化

一个音在语流中受相邻的音影响而变得与其相像的现象叫“音的同化”。

- get them /gettəm/　　read these /ri:ddi:z/

❹ 弱读

弱读是指元音不发饱满，有时候也把辅音音素省略的情况。一般来说，句子中的实词（如动词、名词、副词等）重读，虚词（如介词、助动词等）弱读。

- Tower of London　　of弱读为/əv/　　train to Birmingham　　to弱读为/tə/

2.2 英语口音

❶ 雅思听力材料口音占比

在雅思听力考试中会出现多种不同的英语口音，各种口音的占比约为：英音50%、美音20%~25%、澳音20%、其他口音5%~10%。

❷ 美国口音的特点

/r/卷舌音较多

- barter /'bɑ:rtər/　　order /'ɔ:rdər/　　here /hɪr/

/æ/的发音

在s，t，th，f，l，m，n等辅音字母（组合）之前的字母a，美音中一般发/æ/音。

- pass /pæs/　　path /pæθ/　　staff /stæf/

/ɑ/的发音

在美音中，字母o在很多单词中发/ɑ:/音。

- cop /kɑ:p/　　not /nɑ:t/　　fox /fɑ:ks/

/ʌ/的发音

美音中的/ʌ/发音时口形较窄，和/ə/相似。

- love /lʌv/　　brush /brʌʃ/

/t/的发音

在某些情况下，美音中的清辅音/t/会浊化，发/d/音。

- not at all /nɑ:dədɔ:l/　　water /'wɔ:dər/

/hw/的发音

在美音中，/hw/是大部分以wh-开头的单词的常见发音。

- why /hwaɪ/　　when /hwen/

❸ 澳大利亚口音的特点

/aɪ/通常会读成/ɔɪ/

- pineapple /'pɔɪnæpl/　　fire /'fɔɪə/

/eɪ/通常会读成/aɪ/

- day /daɪ/　　mate /maɪt/

❹ 英国地方口音的特点

伦敦东区口音的特点：咬舌音/θ/有时会发成/f/；/ð/有时发成/v/

- think /fɪnk/　　with /wɪv/

英格兰中部及北部口音的特点：/ʌ/通常发成/ʊ/的音

- love /lʊv/　　cup /kʊp/

苏格兰口音的特点：有些双元音会发成单元音

- take /tik/　　Tuesday /'tju:zdi/

Tips

在雅思听力考试中，有时会遇到印度口音，印度口音的特点通常是将/t/读成/d/，/k/读成/g/，/p/读成/b/，/θ/读成/d/，/r/读成/l/。比如：thanks会读成/dæŋgs/；practice makes perfect会读成/'blægdɪs meɪgs 'bɜ:fɪgd/。

2.3 巩固练习

练习1 请听录音并跟读以下单词和短语。

1 Atlantic Ocean　　2 date of birth　　3 student newspaper　　4 literature

5 guidebook　　6 end of term　　7 letter　　8 social event

练习2 **请写出以下单词或短语中的语音现象。**

Example take away 连读

1 that person _____

2 bedtime _____

3 smoke alarm _____

4 injection of vaccine _____

练习3 **请听录音，写出你听到的单词或短语。**

1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____

5 _____ 6 _____ 7 _____

3 题型讲解

3.1 高频场景

在雅思听力考试中，购物场景经常出现在Part 1或Part 2中，以填空题为主。考生需要注意积累与购物场景相关的词汇。该场景下的高频考点包括：

- 失物招领处咨询
- 购买咨询
- 商场兼职工作
- 优惠活动
- 支付方式
- 会员卡办理



3.2 题型演练

练习1 **请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。**

Complete the notes below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.*

Barter Group

The group's requirement: not to buy new things for 1 _____

Only buy 2 _____ and 3 _____

Because people waste too much money on shopping, such as 4 _____ and 5 _____

Sometimes borrow things from 6 _____ and 7 _____

Or buy things in 8 _____

Exception: New 9 _____ for the flat

Number of members now: 10 _____ around the UK

练习2 **请听一段独白，并按照题目要求作答。**

Complete the notes below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.*

Consumers' Habits

- Group one: young people (maximum age: 1 _____)
  Spend more money on 2 _____ and 3 _____
- People of the 35 to 59-year-old group spend most salary on 4 _____
  Some would spend on 5 _____
- People over 6 _____ years old like spending on 7 _____ and 8 _____
  They would like to 9 _____ themselves, rather than sharing work with 10 _____.

4 课后练习

4.1 请听三段对话，并按照题目要求写出听到的物品和相应的价格。

Complete the notes below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.*

1 Item: _____ Price: _____

2 Item: _____ Price: _____

3 Item: _____ Price: _____

4.2 请听一段独白，圈出你听到的食材。

Sunday Roast

beef	tomatoes	potatoes	beans	cucumbers	broccoli
carrots	salt	sugar	cheese	chicken	eggs

4.3 请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。

Answer the questions below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS** for each answer.*

1 What did their parents do shopping for?

_____

2 What dish is Martin preparing?

_____

3 What ingredient does Emma cut for Martin?

_____

4 What's on Martin's face?

_____

5 What things do Martin and Emma need to buy?

_____

4.4 请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。

Complete the notes below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.*

Shopping Habits

Number of family members: 1 _____

2 _____ and I do the shopping.

3 _____ is the best way to save money.

4 _____ and 5 _____ never go shopping.

Sometimes I buy fashionable things such as 6 _____ and 7 _____.

I have returned a 8 _____ bag in a 9 _____.

It took me 10 _____ hours to return the bag.

Reading

1 词汇基础

1.1 请将下列房屋类型与其释义相匹配。

1 villa
2 mansion
3 flat
4 bungalow
5 cabin
6 hotel

A a large impressive house
B a set of rooms for living in, including a kitchen, usually on one floor of a building
C a building where people stay, usually for a short time, paying for their rooms and meals
D a small house or shelter, usually made of wood
E a house built all on one level, without stairs
F a house in the country with a large garden, especially in southern Europe

1.2 请从方框中选择正确的单词或短语填空，完成句子。

carpet　lamp　sofa　wardrobe　drawer　mirror　sink　rocking chair

1 Could you turn on the _____, please? The room is so dark that I cannot read my papers here.
2 Grandmother enjoyed sitting in the _____, swinging back and forth with a cat on her lap.
3 He opened the top _____ of his desk, and took out a brown envelope.
4 Dirty plates have already piled up in the kitchen _____. You'd better clean them as soon as possible.
5 The newly laid _____ in the bedroom creates a warm and elegant atmosphere.
6 Her _____ consists primarily of a huge quantity of cashmere sweaters and Italian sandals.
7 He went into the bathroom absent-mindedly and looked at himself in the _____.
8 The _____ was recently renovated so that you can comfortably curl yourself up in it.

1.3 请阅读下面四种新型家用电器的介绍，为不同的顾客选择最适合他们的产品。

Let's look at some of the most important high-tech home devices that were made in 2018, from the first consumer modular TV ever made to a device that tracks your sleep patterns.

The Wall

The aptly named 'The Wall' was perhaps the most exciting product at CES 2018, and with very good cause. The first thing about it is: it looks incredible. As the first Micro-LED TV ever

produced, it has an in-built system which removes the dependence on colour filters or back light. Nonetheless, for many observers, The Wall's main advantage is its adaptable design which provides users with the possibility to change the size of the screen to adapt to their lifestyle needs.

Sleep

Setting the new standard for sleep-tracking devices, Sleep was one of the best innovations for a good night's sleep in 2018. Just put the sensor below your pillow and you can rely on it to perform all the key functions such as monitoring and measuring your sleep patterns, heartbeat, sleep length plus snoring patterns, and storing all the information on your mobile phone or other devices through the health app. Does this sound familiar? Wait. The thing that makes this device unique is that the tracker also operates as a home automation device. This means you can make your ideal sleeping and waking environment by allowing it to control all the electronic items in your home — lights on and off, and curtains shut when you go to bed. It will also start your coffee maker as soon as you get up.

Wireless Kitchen

As modern kitchens are used for many different purposes nowadays, including cooking meals, working and chatting, it's a good idea to make sure the kitchen is a space free from clutter by creating a more user-friendly and spacious home. At CES 2018 showcase, Wireless Kitchen was demonstrated with spaces that contain built-in wireless points connected to all the electronic devices, including all the most recent mobile phones, computers and other smart kitchen appliances. In contrast to many other electronic innovations on the market, this concept is highly practical and will be of great value to people in the future.

Wall Speaker

Beyond the appearance, versatility and noise control system for better in-room acoustics, there are more reasons to invest in the Wall Speaker. As an award winner of innovations, this adaptable and wireless sound system can be played anywhere with the company's core app. When you need to have a wireless audio playback experience in any room in your house, you can control your music easily on a range of devices, from mobile phones, tablets to computers.

1 Jim is highly sensitive to sounds, especially when he is sleeping. He also enjoys listening to music while studying or relaxing at home. _____ is a good choice for him.

2 David has a serious snoring problem, and is now aiming to keep a healthy lifestyle, so he wants to monitor the key figures concerning his body. He should purchase _____.

3 Mia lives with her husband and two children. She wants to buy a TV that caters to their own needs and, occasionally, that of a large group of friends when they have a movie night. _____ is the best choice.

4 Selina is planning to build a multi-functional kitchen in her new house, and it should be intelligent enough to accommodate several needs at the same time. Therefore, she should keep an eye on _____.

1.4 日常生活中你有哪些经常使用的物品？请试着列举一些。

_____

_____

主题词汇

chimney /'tʃɪmni/ *n.* 烟囱
fence /fens/ *n.* 栅栏；围墙
balcony /'bælkəni/ *n.* 阳台
lawn /lɔːn/ *n.* 草坪
ceiling /'siːlɪŋ/ *n.* 天花板
detached house 独立房屋
drainage /'dreɪnɪdʒ/ *n.* 排水系统
fireplace /'faɪəpleɪs/ *n.* 壁炉
armchair /'ɑːmtʃeə(r)/ *n.* 扶手椅
ornament /'ɔːnəmənt/ *n.* 装饰品
freezer /'friːzə(r)/ *n.* 冷冻室，冰柜
dishwasher /'dɪʃwɒʃə(r)/ *n.* 洗碗机
jug /dʒʌg/ *n.* （有柄带嘴的）壶，罐
mug /mʌg/ *n.* 马克杯
kettle /'ketl/ *n.* （烧水用的）水壶
mattress /'mætrəs/ *n.* 床垫；褥子
duvet /'duːveɪ/ *n.* 羽绒被
cushion /'kʊʃn/ *n.* 垫子
rug /rʌg/ *n.* 小地毯
basin /'beɪsn/ *n.* 盆
shower curtain 浴帘
pyjamas /pə'dʒɑːməz/ *n.* 睡衣裤
vacuum /'vækjuːm/ *n.* 真空
hoover /'huːvə(r)/ *v.* 用真空吸尘器清扫（地毯、地板等）
polish /'pɒlɪʃ/ *v.* 擦亮

2 能力培养

说明性文章

基于不同的写作目的，常见的文章大致可以分为三类：说明性文章、叙述性文章和议论性文章。在雅思阅读考试中，说明性文章是经常出现的一种文章类型，旨在通过描述事实、情况、行为和经验等信息，介绍一个或多个具体或抽象的概念，重在解释和描述。雅思阅读考试（A类）具备高度的学术性，所选用的文章通常难度较大。说明性文章按一定的逻辑顺序展开，并遵循相应的学术规范。在阅读过程中，首先要通过文章的写作方法来理清逻辑脉络，这有助于我们更快地理解文章的主要内容和主旨思想，对答题有很大帮助。

说明性文章的**写作方法**大致可以分为以下几类：

- 描述法：描述一个主体的属性、特征等，并给出实例；
- 顺序法：按时间、空间或过程的顺序说明各个项目；
- 比较法：对比两个或多个对象、事件之间的相同点与不同点；
- 阐释法：阐释某种观点、现象产生的原因以及相对应的结果。

根据所涉及领域的不同，说明性文章又有许多不同的**类型**，如商业报告、新闻报道、宣传广告、学术论文、科普文章、说明书、指南等。

任务1 请写出下列文本对应的写作方法和类型。

1 写作方法_____ 类型_____

Best Buy Manager Analyses Chinese Tumble Dryer Market

As a growing number of Chinese families embrace all the fashions and appliances of the contemporary, affluent lifestyle — wide-screen TVs, cars, washing machines, refrigerators with intelligent ice-makers — one notable exception remains: the tumble dryer. Joseph, the manager of Best Buy, gave his own opinions of the reasons after a marketing survey. 'The majority of Chinese consumers have no interest in buying tumble dryers. They simply don't want them and won't pay money for them. Even if they have them in their homes, they don't use them,' said Joseph. In terms of the local sales volume, he pointed out that the demand for tumble dryers — or even washer-dryer combinations — 'is absolutely in its early stages'. In the chain stores, these home appliances account for less than 15 per cent of washing-machine revenues.

2 写作方法_____ 类型_____

Is Home Cooking Very Far from the Kind of Cooking Done by Professional Chefs?

If you believe cooking is just about stirring your sauce into the pan, or taking a break and relaxing while you wait for the timer to go off, you certainly won't have fun cooking in a commercial kitchen, especially when the restaurant is filled with customers. Professional kitchens are always filled with busy activities. Staff will be carrying incredibly hot pots and pans, walking by as they pass them over your head, trying to do multiple tasks all at once. Kitchens are places where there is always work that needs to be done, whether that's in the kitchen or out in the restaurant. This could include anything from chopping vegetables for the next shift,

cleaning the surfaces, or even washing dishes when there's nothing else to do. Compared with a comfortable home kitchen, the professional kitchen is hot, uncomfortable, and at times, overcrowded. Busy chefs can be extremely rude when they aren't able to get exactly what they want, which can be hard for anyone to bear.

3 写作方法_____ 类型_____

A Guidebook to a Gorgeous Four-season Garden

Here are some useful guidelines on how to choose proper plants to build a four-season garden, without the seasonal changes interfering with the blossoms.

1 Spring Choices

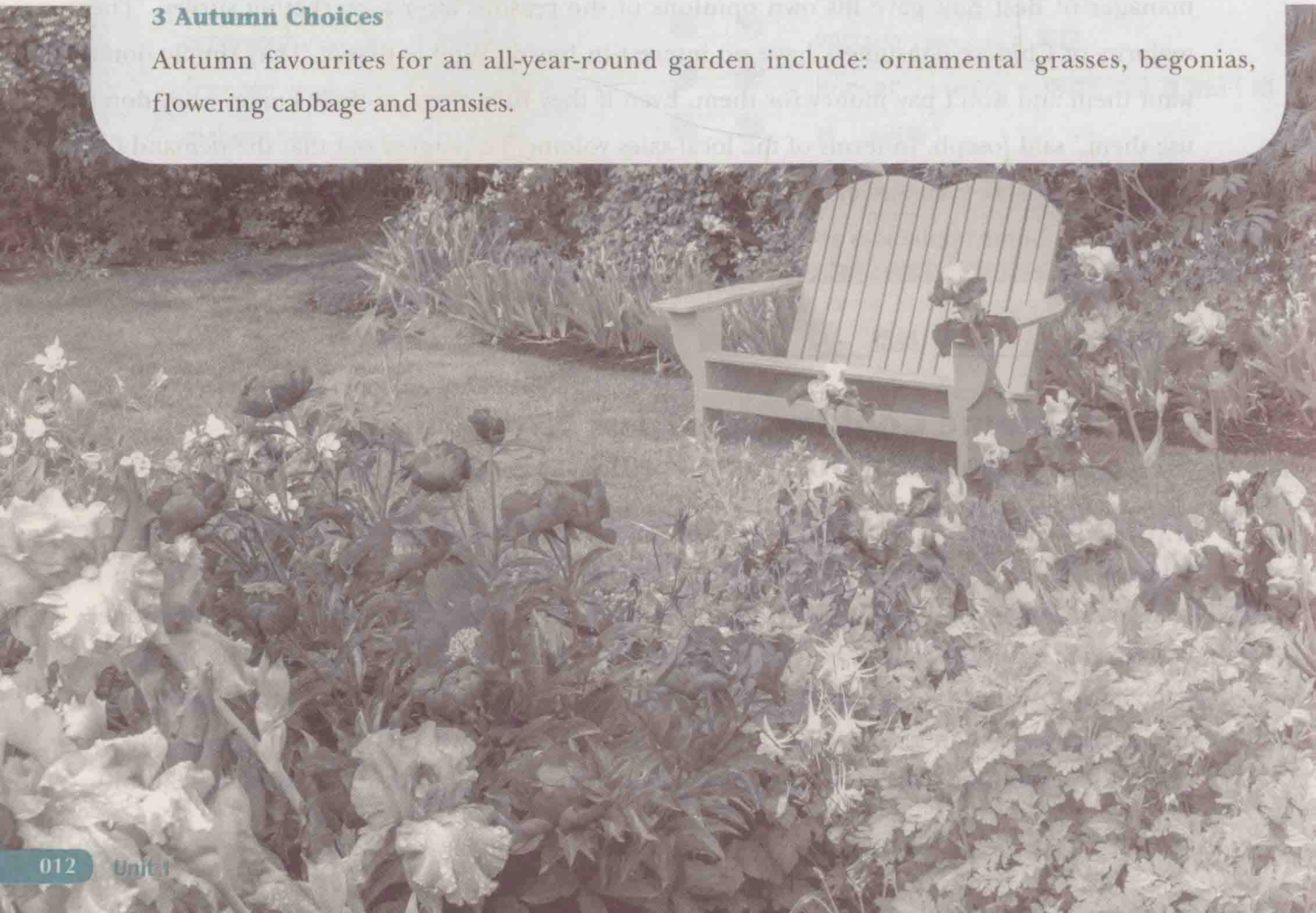
Make sure the spring section of the garden has plenty of bulbs suitable for this month, as well as other spring-blooming flowers that will give your garden a sprinkling of colour after the long winter months. Such flowers could include: tulips, daffodils and pansies.

2 Summer Choices

There is a wide range of flowers suitable for summer that has amazing growing potential. While there are far too many flowers to list here, some of the more popular types can include: lilies, coneflowers, nasturtiums, roses and hydrangeas.

3 Autumn Choices

Autumn favourites for an all-year-round garden include: ornamental grasses, begonias, flowering cabbage and pansies.



4 Winter Choices

People living in southerly climates can look forward to a range of colours during the colder months, which include varieties of plants like the hardy camellia. However, those living in northerly areas can enjoy such plants as evergreen holly, firethorn and chokeberry bushes that have great berry crops throughout the winter months. Early flowering plants like snowdrops and hellebores can even cope with cold conditions and snow, and are often seen emerging on snowy days at the end of winter.

任务2 **请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。**

A Very English Success Story

Sir James Dyson, born in the UK, is an inventor, industrial engineer, and businessman who has successfully developed many hi-tech household appliances and goes on to become a tireless advocate of engineering and technical innovation in Britain.

As a child, James went to the renowned Gresham School in rural Holt. After completing his high school, he moved on to London and attended the Byam Shaw School of Art in the middle part of the 1960s, before taking courses in furniture and interior design at the Royal College of Art towards the end of the decade. It was during this period that he was made aware of the creative possibilities of bringing together engineering and design philosophies. After graduation, he found a job at a firm in Somerset, where he worked alongside the company's bold and ambitious chairman, Jeremy Fry, to design and produce the Sea Truck, a small, quick, adaptable landing craft made from fibreglass, with applications for both military and civilian users. In the mid-1970s, Sir Dyson started his own firm to develop the Ballbarrow, a bin-shaped barrow that rolled on a ball rather than on a wheel.

By the late 1970s, Sir Dyson had become irritated with the bad air at his Ballbarrow factory and so he himself developed a device to provide a better working environment by improving the air quality. Later, he adapted this device and applied it to domestic vacuum cleaners. This was a project he worked on for the next five years, when he developed thousands of prototypes, before settling upon a satisfactory design that circulated incoming unclean air within a cylindrical container. Inside this container, the dirt was divided by centrifugal force from the air and the purified air was allowed to escape from the top of the vacuum cleaner. Manufacturers of conventional vacuum cleaners demonstrated no interest in Dyson's new product, filling him with a deep feeling of bitterness towards conventional business approaches.

He later sold his design to a Japanese company and achieved an incredible commercial success, culminating in an award for design innovation in the early 1990s. By the middle part of that

decade, Sir James Dyson had opened a factory in England once again, and within a couple of years, his vacuum model had become the best-selling model in the country, even though the price was much higher than that of his competitors. His aesthetically pleasing and practical appliances subsequently won numerous design awards and were displayed in art and design museums across the globe. Sir Dyson was encouraged by his success and went on to develop other products, such as the fan without blades, introduced in 2009. The fan works by sucking in air through the bottom and blowing it over the inner surface of a ring, which then creates an airflow from the centre of the device.

Dyson's design and commercial success made him a representative figure for the rejuvenation of design innovation in the UK. He published a book called *Against the Odds* in 1997, which was a personal tale of his never-say-die attitude in the face of failure. He was also awarded a CBE by the Queen a few years later. In 2002 the James Dyson Foundation was set up to help aspiring young people get into engineering by awarding them prizes and grants. In 2009 the British government asked James to suggest ways in which innovation could be promoted. He then came up with the idea for a university-based programme called Ingenious Britain. The aim of this programme was to give academic institutions and design centres more freedom to develop unorthodox engineering teaching and to encourage more collaboration between universities and technology firms.

1 请判断这篇文章的写作方法。

---

2 请根据文章的结构特征，将方框中的表述按顺序排列。

A Dyson sold his innovative vacuum design and achieved a great success.

B Dyson invented other new products, like the bladeless fan.

C The James Dyson Foundation was established.

D Dyson started a company in Britain again to produce his vacuum models.

E Dyson set up a firm to produce the Ballbarrow.

F Dyson was invited by the British government to give advice on promoting domestic innovation.

_____ → _____ → _____ → _____ → _____ → _____

Tips

不管是从提升阅读能力还是从备考雅思考试的角度出发，了解说明性文章的写作方法都是十分必要的。解答排序题时，利用说明性文章的写作方法解读文章，是一种非常有效的方法。

3 题型讲解

特征匹配题

特征匹配题是雅思阅读考试中匹配题的一个分类，主要考查考生对不同事实或观点的理解。特征匹配题要求考生将数个观点或表述与人物或事物进行匹配。题目的排列顺序并不是文章中信息出现的顺序，因此最好根据选项的顺序，而非题目的顺序来筛选并寻找答案。特征匹配题通常都是对于原文中一些细节信息的改述，因此该题型考查的是理解、归纳等综合能力。

任务1 请将下列相近的观点相匹配。

1 Affluent consumers surely want the products to solve their 'poverty of time' problem.

2 Electronic technology is just one sign of the changes in the traditionally dull world of home appliances.

3 In the early days electronics were seen as a fancy gimmick, but now they're viewed as essential.

4 One reason for increased sensitivity to the aesthetics of appliances is that they are more often in sight.

A Rich people have solid demand for home appliances to save their time.

B People's opinion on electronic appliances has been significantly improved.

C Customers have a higher expectation on the appearance of home appliances because they are more often seen in the house now.

D Home appliances have experienced a lot of changes, and electronic technology accounts for one.

任务2 请阅读下面的段落，根据要求完成题目。

The size of the rooms in this dorm building can be anything from 10 to 20 square metres. All rooms are equipped with a desk, a chair, a sofa, a bed, a bath and a shower. Students should bring their own bedding, fixtures and decorations. Each occupant is given full use of the communal area in the building, which includes the living room and the kitchen, as well as the recreational area outside. Flats have great facilities such as a comfortable sofa and a wide-screen TV in the living room, as well as a dining table and seating in the kitchen and the dining room. The kitchen also contains a cooker, a microwave oven, three refrigerators and two freezers, as well as cupboards for foodstuffs. Students should bring their own pans, plates and cooking utensils. Students are often allowed to use the communal facilities such as the kettle, the coffeemaker, etc. Washing and drying machines are available in the basement. The administrators don't allow pets, such as cats and dogs, into the building as some people suffer allergies. Smoking is also banned inside the building.

1 请圈出段落中提及的内容。

car parking	room size	kitchenware	pet allowance	wardrobe	recreation

2 请画出下列表述在段落中的对应处，并标注相应的字母。

A The apartment won't supply bedding.

B Smoking is not allowed in the apartments.

C Various kitchen facilities are offered.

任务3 **请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。**

Some Assembly Needed

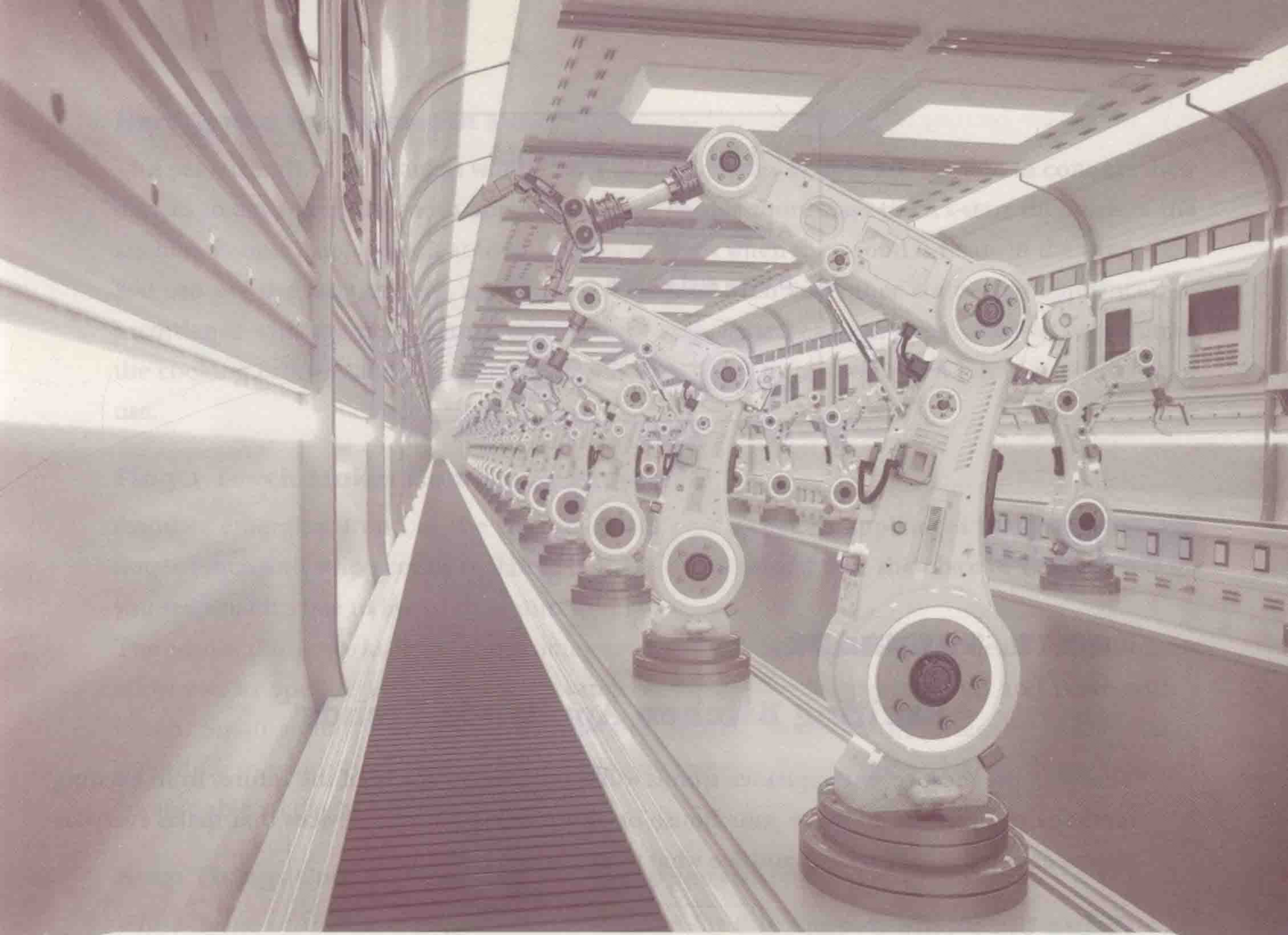
Robots are now able to put flat-pack furniture together

In the late 1990s, the game of chess was all the rage. These days it appears that computers have mastered a job that pushes the human brain to its upper limits. In a report recently published in *Science Robotics*, a team of researchers at Nanyang Technological University, in Singapore, wrote that they have managed to make a couple of regular industrial robots put together almost all of a piece of flat-pack furniture from a leading furniture supplier.

The chair they put together was a type called STEFAN. The robots' task was to assemble the legs and the back. This process needed several bolts and screws to be inserted into some holes. After this stage was complete, the components of the chair were put together to complete the task. Overall, says Pham Quang Cuong, one of the report's authors, 19 parts were involved.

The robots were typical of the kind of industrial machines used in factories all over the globe, with tiny cameras built into them that allowed them to process 3D images. Two videos shown by the research team demonstrated how the robots' arms made a series of errors, dropping components on the floor or putting them in the wrong place, before getting the task right after more than nine minutes of slow, painstaking work.

Despite all of these precautions, the robots needed quite a lot of guidance. They were given specific instructions before they began their tasks. For example: 'Arm 2: Take the front piece. Arm 1: Take a screw. Arm 2: Rotate the front piece so that the hole is pointing down. Arm 1: Insert the screw into the top-right hole.' Before the assembly process began, the robots spent an additional 11 minutes learning about their surroundings and working out the stages required to follow these instructions, before they attempted to follow through on them. Further, even though the bigger parts of the chair were put in random places, which meant the robots needed to use the camera to recognise them by matching them with the pictures in the computer file, the screws were then picked up and put in their proper place.



The outcome was, considering everything, highly impressive, says Dr Pham. As a result, his research team has gained a huge amount of interest from the robotics industry. In future he hopes that he and his team will be able to get rid of the robots' training wheels. One possibility is to find a way of enabling the machines to learn independently by studying a human being putting together a chair. Considering the problems that most people encounter when they assemble flat-pack furniture, that may, however, also teach them to throw the whole thing away in anger.

Look at the following elements (Questions 1–4) and the list of components below.

Match each element with the correct component, ***A–D****.*

1 the accessories put in the chair to fasten it

2 the part of the robot to identify the objects that need to be assembled

3 the part of the robot to which detailed instructions are given

4 the elements to form the shape of the chair

List of Components

A legs and back

B bolts and screws

C arms

D cameras

4 课后练习

请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

Exciting Kitchen Appliance Trends

This year, the most recent appliance trends will let you into a vision of the future, from exciting methods you can use to make your house or apartment smart, to devices that make everyday chores easier. Just take a peek and see what your kitchen could be like.

Rising Up: Steam Ovens

At the head of this list is something that is genuinely new. Our experts have concluded that one of the newest trends in kitchen appliances is the emergence of the steam oven. This is something that is going to be a constant fixture in homes from now on.

Steam is a useful way of heating, as it is a source of both power and cleanliness. Steam ovens provides a healthy way of cooking that reduces the time you spend keeping your oven clean. Besides, if you want something that not only has health benefits but also stays at a high temperature, you should go for a convection steam oven.

The Fridge Revival

Refrigerators are going to change this year. This is going to be perhaps the most significant change to the style and functionality of the kitchen as a whole. Refrigerators are going to start becoming useful in multiple ways.

First, let's look at the colour. Black coatings are the newest thing to expect this year. After that, there is going to be a range of different storage areas which segregate the different types of food people want to store. Some food storage spaces can be used to store different foodstuffs, while others can only be used for certain things.

It is also likely that refrigerators will no longer be opened by handles. The use of smart technology will make refrigerators operate automatically, making the work in the kitchen more efficient.

Here Comes the Bluetooth Sync

This year, trends in appliances will be seen in many areas. People will be able to connect their devices to a wireless bluetooth app, which gives people more ways to kick-start the work of the kitchen. People can just look at their phones to know when their food is ready in the oven.

You can use the latest hi-tech applications with your oven and other connected appliances, in accordance with the newest innovations. Your cooker can tell your oven when to synchronise the cooking process, and it can automatically turn lights on and off when it is in use and out of use.

Finger Touch Makes Handles Redundant

Another emerging trend in the sphere of this year's kitchen appliances is the wider use of finger touch and swipe controls. These high-tech systems will take the place of handles and let you see what it's like to live in the future.

The whole thing works using electromagnetic heat, rather than regular heat. These systems allow you to operate within a certain range and turn the temperature up and down with a touch. Small signals will appear on the site, letting you alter the intensity of the flame according to your needs. This is a fantastic way to control your fire and keep things tidy and comfortable all day long!

Keep Things Cool with an Icy White Appearance

White is one of the most popular colour choices for this year's kitchen appliances. White ice appliances are starting a trend which puts the cleanliness of the kitchen at the heart of its aesthetic.

Nelson's has a new range of white kitchen appliances called the Ice. Combined with steel grey appliances, these white ice designs are going to be one of the most popular style innovations of the year. Take a look for yourself and see how these incredible styles will lead to a new appearance for your kitchen.

The Wi-Fi Connection

When it comes to Wi-Fi connections, this year will see a transformation in the way we communicate with our new kitchen appliances. Many new types of appliances are being produced with a special feature, which enables you to control everything from your smartphone or other devices.

This will allow you to alter the temperature in your kitchen, the lighting in your fridge, as well as the timing of your oven and cooker. You will also be able to operate your microwave and many other appliances from your phone. This year, you will find it easier than ever to work in your kitchen, and this new relationship between your home and technology is the perfect way to start a new journey.

Look at the following statements (Questions 1–6) and the list of trends below.

Match each statement with the correct trend, ***A–F****.*

1 Nelson's has led a new trend in this latest aesthetic design.

2 It provides a healthier and cleaner energy to power your kitchen.

3 It specialises the way to store different types of food.

4 It can be more convenient to operate the fire through this technology.

5 It changes how we connect to the kitchen appliances.

6 Different appliances can be connected via this innovation.

List of Trends

A Steam Ovens

B Fridge Revival

C Bluetooth Sync

D Finger Touch

E The Icy White Appearance

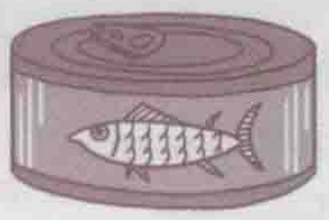
F Wi-Fi Connection

Speaking

1 词汇基础

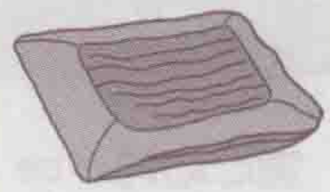
1.1 请使用表格中的单词描述下列图片。

Colour	Size	Flavour	Material
brown, white, red, orange, blue, grey	large, medium, small	sweet, sour, bitter, spicy, salty	glass, metal, plastic, paper

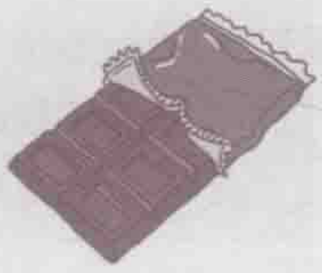


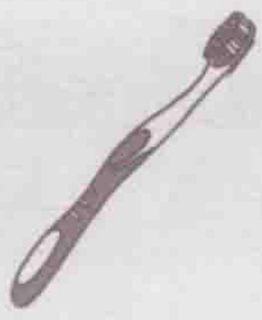














1.2 请根据图片，从方框中选择正确的单词或短语填入空白处。

cabinet	coffee maker	cutting board	dishwasher	microwave
pan	paper towels	pot	refrigerator	toaster



1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

7 _____

8 _____

9 _____

10 _____

2 能力培养

2.1 语法训练——被动语态

如果句子的主语并非动作的发起者，而是动作的承受者，就需要使用被动语态。被动语态的基本结构为：be动词 + 过去分词（+ by + 动作的执行者）。这里的by通常翻译为“被……”，也可以根据语境灵活翻译。

- I really like the way my house **is decorated**. 我真的很喜欢我的房子装修后的样子。
- The basement **was repainted by my father**. 地下室被我爸爸重新粉刷了一遍。

❶ 被动语态的主要用法

形式	解释	例句
情态动词 + be + 过去分词	“情态动词 + 被动语态”表示可能性 (can)、推测 (may)、建议 (should)、义务 (must) 等	The car **should be washed** tomorrow. 那辆车明天应该洗一下了。 情态动词 should 表示“应该”。
be + being + 过去分词	进行时的被动语态表示“正在被（持续）……”	The room **is being cleaned** by my mother. 房间正在被我妈妈打扫。 “被打扫”是现在正在进行的动作。
have + been + 过去分词	现在完成时的被动语态表示“（到现在）已经被……”	The wardrobe **has been used** for over 30 years. 这个衣柜已经用了30多年了。 现在完成时表示“从30多年前到现在一直用”。
had + been + 过去分词	过去完成时的被动语态表示“（到过去的某时）已经被……”	He told me that the postcard **had been sent** to New York. 他告诉我明信片已经寄到纽约去了。 过去完成时表示明信片在“他告诉我”之前已被寄出。
be + 过去分词 + to + 动词原形	“被动语态 + 不定式”表示“让做……，要做……”，为被动语态的动词提供具体信息	Mary **was told to clean** her study. 玛丽被告知去打扫她的书房。 to 之后是“被告知”的具体内容。
need / want + 现在分词	特殊的被动结构：need或want后接现在分词，可表示被动的意义	The garage **needs fixing**. 车库需要修理了。 与The garage needs to be fixed. 这样的被动语态相比，“need + 现在分词”的形式更加简洁。

❷ 主动语态与被动语态的区别

- Mark fixed the broken speaker. 马克修好了坏掉的扬声器。
- The broken speaker was fixed by Mark. 坏掉的扬声器被马克修好了。

（第一句为主动语态，主语是Mark，强调修好扬声器的是Mark；第二句为被动语态，主语是The broken speaker，这句话着重强调的是扬声器被修好了，而非强调这个扬声器是被Mark修好的。在一些不清楚或不强调动作执行者的语境中，被动语态后的“by + 动作执行者”会被省略。）

练习1 请画出下列段落中的被动语态，并猜一猜每个段落描述的是什么事物。

Example It is considered the most crucial human invention in the 20th century. It was designed to provide a worldwide network. Now it is used for commercial purposes as well as for social networking. We use it every day to send e-mails, read news, and navigate.

What is it? the Internet

1 It was said to be invented by Cang Jie. It was specially designed so that every Chinese could learn to read and write without much difficulty. It is one of the most scientific writing systems in the world.

What is it? _____

2 Words in one or more specific languages are collected in it, and they are often arranged in the alphabet. Information on definitions, usages, pronunciations is provided. Translation is also included in it.

What is it? _____

3 It had been believed that Ethiopians were the first to have discovered it. It is prepared from roasted beans. Because of the caffeine inside, it is said that a lot of people cannot live a single day without drinking it.

What is it? _____

练习2 请用已学词汇和语法描述下列图片所展示的话题。



Example

I have a whole set of kitchenware that is arranged orderly in the kitchen. The metal cutlery...

2.2 发音训练——单词的省音现象1

省音是单词的某一个音或几个音在一定的条件下省略的现象。省音能提高语速，使说话更省力。省音可以分为历史省音和语境省音两类。

❶ 历史省音

历史省音指最初存在于单词内的某个音随着时间的推移在口语发音中被省略。

- history /'hɪstəri/ → /'hɪstri/　　family /'fæməli/ → /'fæmli/

❷ 语境省音

语境省音是指单词内的某个音在组成合成词或短语时被省略。

- used to /'juːst 'tu/ → /'juːs 'tu/　　just now /'dʒʌst 'naʊ/ → /'dʒʌs 'naʊ/

请听录音，跟读模仿以下单词和例句，纠正自己的发音。

字母组合wr，kn，gn在词首时，字母w，k，g通常不发音

write /raɪt/　***v.*** **写**

Alice wrote very neatly in blue ink. 艾丽斯用蓝墨水写得整整齐齐。

knife /naɪf/　***n.*** **刀**

Use a sharp knife to cut the melon into sections. 用快刀把瓜切成块。

gnaw /nɔː/　***v.*** **咬**

The puppy was gnawing on a bone. 小狗在啃骨头。

字母组合gn，gm在词尾时，字母g通常不发音

design /dɪ'zaɪn/　***n.*** **设计；图案**

The tiles come in a huge range of colours and designs. 瓷砖有各种各样的颜色和图案。

foreign /'fɒrən/　***adj.*** **外国的**

I need some foreign exchange. 我需要一些外汇。

paradigm /'pærədaɪm/　***n.*** **范例**

The kitchen model is a paradigm for designers to learn. 这个厨房模型是供设计师学习的范例。

字母组合mn，mb在词尾时，字母n和b通常不发音

autumn /'ɔːtəm/　***n.*** **秋天**

Autumn is a good time to travel. 秋天是旅行的好时间。

lamb /læm/　***n.*** **小羊，羔羊**

Laura was basting the leg of the lamb. 劳拉正在往烤羊腿上涂油。

climb /klaɪm/　***v.*** **爬，攀登**

She climbed up the stairs. 她爬上了楼梯。

在字母组合bt中，字母b通常不发音

debt /det/　***n.*** **债，债务**

We paid our debt on time. 我们按时还上了债务。

doubt /daʊt/　***n.*** **怀疑，疑虑**

This raises doubts about the effect of advertising. 这引起了（人们）对广告效果的怀疑。

subtle /'sʌtl/　***adj.*** **微妙的；机智的**

The dish had a subtle hint of ginger. 这道菜微微带点姜的味道。

在字母组合alf，alk，alm中，字母l通常不发音

half /hɑːf/ ***n.*** **一半**

The second half of the book is more interesting. 这本书的后半部分更有趣。

talk /tɔːk/ ***v.*** **说话**

When she came back, they were talking about Italian food. 当她回来时，他们正在谈论意大利菜。

palm /pɑːm/ ***n.*** **手掌**

She sat waiting, resting her chin in the palm of her hand. 她坐着等，手掌托着下巴。

在字母组合stle，sten，ften中，字母t通常不发音

castle /ˈkɑːsl/ ***n.*** **城堡**

This toy company considered combining pirates into the castle theme.

这家玩具公司曾考虑将海盗与城堡主题相结合。

fasten /ˈfɑːsn/ ***v.*** **系牢**

Fasten your seat belts, please. 请系好安全带。

soften /ˈsɒfn/ ***v.*** **（使）变软；（使）温和**

This liquid will soften your laundry. 这种液体会使你的衣服变得柔软。

3 话题讲解

3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——住所



这是一个经典话题，描述住所时不要赘述，但也不要回答得过于简单。

这个很难把控。





雅思口语Part 1的本质是聊天，你至少用2~3句话回答。

那就需要描述一些细节。





没错，你可以详细描述你家的家具，比如电视、餐桌、沙发等，还可以说说家里的装饰品，比如墙上的画、书桌上的摆设等。

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

- What kind of place do you live in?
- How long have you lived there?
- Do you prefer living in a house or a flat / an apartment? [Why?]
- What do you like about the rooms in your house?

话题表达

comfortable /'kʌmftəbl/ *adj.* 舒适的

spacious /'speɪʃəs/ *adj.* 宽敞的

bright /braɪt/ *adj.* 明亮的

cosy /'kəʊzi/ *adj.* 温暖舒适的

furniture /'fɜːnɪtʃə(r)/ *n.* 家具

a comfy sofa 一个舒服的沙发

a large flat-screen TV set 一台大的宽屏电视机

decorate...with... 用……装饰……

sound system 音响系统

I currently live in an apartment located in... 我目前住在位于……的公寓里。

In my bedroom, there are... 在我的卧室里，有……

The kitchen has a stove and... 厨房里有一个炉子和……

My favourite piece of furniture is... 我最喜欢的家具是……

I would invite my close friends and relatives to my place to... 我会邀请我的好朋友和亲戚来我家……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

My house is very comfortable. It's spacious and bright. My mother has added some new pieces of furniture recently. We have a very comfy sofa in the living room, and a large flat-screen TV set hanging on the wall. She also decorated the house with pictures and paintings. It looks very cosy. I have my own room, with a queen-size bed, and a large desk.

3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——物品

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

Describe a thing you cannot live without (besides a mobile phone or a computer).

You should say:

what it is

when you bought it / began to use it

what functions it has

and explain why you cannot live without it.

思路解析与拓展



这道题请你描述一件“生活必需品”，但不可以是手机或者电脑。那么这件“必需品”可以是其他的电子产品，比如运动手环、蓝牙耳机等。也可以选择非电子产品进行描述，如运动鞋、保温杯等。

我觉得在生活里我最需要的是网络，没有网络的日子很难熬。





没问题啊，除了实物，你也可以描述某个网站、某款手机应用等，比如学习软件、购物网站等。无论描述的是什么，除了简单介绍其属性，还要将重点放在cannot live without it上，也就是强调它对你的重要性、你使用它的频率和对它的喜爱程度，比如你出门一定要带着它或者你做某事时一定会用到它等。



我懂了！我几乎每天都会使用网络，特别是当写作业遇到难题时，可以借助一些网站向他人求助。



很好，正确使用网络有助于我们的学习，但千万不要沉迷于网络。

话题表达

headphones /'hedfəʊnz/ *n.* 头戴式耳机

abandon /ə'bændən/ *v.* 抛弃

company /'kʌmpəni/ *n.* 陪伴

rhythm and melody 节奏和旋律

bring peace and relaxation 带来平静和放松

volume control 音量控制

The main consumer group of the product is... 该产品的主要消费群体是……

There are several reasons for its popularity. 它受欢迎有几个原因。

Its fancy design, stunning appearance and outstanding quality have made it... 它奇特的设计、漂亮的外观和卓越的品质使它……

When it comes to choosing/preparing gifts, ...is vital. 说到挑选/准备礼物，……是至关重要的。

After thinking about it for months, I decided to... 经过几个月的考虑，我决定……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

The thing I cannot live without must be my headphones. I bought them last year, and they bring me peace and relaxation with music delivered to my ears.

Music is beautiful, with its various rhythms ringing in my ears, and melodies travelling up and down. The sound is sweet and clear. So wonderful! The similar enjoyment comes when I'm watching films on computer wearing my headphones in my dorm. There's no need to worry about making too much noise because I'm the only one who can hear the sound of the film.

My black headphone wire is fairly long. There's also a volume control for me to adjust the sound of the music.

But several months ago, I heard that the sense of hearing could be severely weakened by using headphones too much. Honestly speaking, I did consider abandoning the headphones and tried doing so for a couple of days. But I felt I really couldn't bear it. I feel very uneasy without the company of music when I'm alone.

Although this item is less in value to others, it's an essential item for a music lover! I would definitely not die if I live without my headphones, but my life would absolutely be not so good.

4 课后练习

4.1 请将下列语意连贯的内容相匹配，并试着使用这些句型描述你喜爱的物品。

1 I bought it for	A my childhood.
2 It's made of	B daily use.
3 It reminds me of	C cotton.
4 It's important to me because	D my mum bought it on my first day at school.

4.2 请回答以下问题。

- What is the area like where you live?
- Do you prefer the appearance of old or modern buildings?
- Describe a gift you took a long time to prepare.

  You should say:

  what it was

  when you prepared it

  how you prepared it

  and explain why it took you a long time to prepare.
- Describe a popular product made in your country.

  You should say:

  what it is

  who buys it

  where it is sold

  and explain why it is popular.

Writing

1 词汇基础

1.1 请根据中文提示，将下列单词补充完整。

1 参加 p _ _tic _ _ _ te

2 提高 i _ _ r _ ve

3 优先权 _ _ io _ _ _ y

4 完成 a _ _ o _ _ _ ish

5 义务 ob _ _ _ _ tion

6 空闲 l _ _ su _ _

7 家务 hou _ _ _ _ rk

8 家庭的 _ o _ _ _ tic

1.2 请使用1.1中的单词填空，完成下列短语。

1 _____ the goal

2 _____ in leisure activities

3 have a(n) _____ to

4 _____ chores

5 give _____ to

6 _____ the quality of life

2 能力培养

2.1 词汇表达

❶ 核心单词及其派生词

accomplish /ə'kʌmplɪʃ/ *v.* 完成

accomplishment /ə'kʌmplɪʃmənt/ *n.* 成就

contribute /kən'trɪbju:t/ *v.* 贡献；促成

contribution /ˌkɒntrɪ'bju:ʃn/ *n.* 贡献；促成作用

convenient /kən'vi:niənt/ *adj.* 方便的

convenience /kən'vi:niəns/ *n.* 方便

fulfil /fʊl'fɪl/ *v.* 实现；履行

fulfilment /fʊl'fɪlmənt/ *n.* 实现；成就感

participate /pɑ:'tɪsɪpeɪt/ *v.* 参加

participation /pɑ:ˌtɪsɪ'peɪʃn/ *n.* 参与

prefer /prɪ'fɜ:(r)/ *v.* 更喜欢

preference /'prefrəns/ *n.* 偏爱

pursue /pə'sju:/ *v.* 从事；追求

pursuit /pə'sju:t/ *n.* 追求

consume /kən'sju:m/ *v.* 消耗

consumption /kən'sʌmpʃn/ *n.* 消耗

satisfy /'sætɪsfaɪ/ *v.* 满足

satisfaction /ˌsætɪs'fækʃn/ *n.* 满意，满足

expend /ɪk'spend/ *v.* 花费

expenditure /ɪk'spendɪtʃə(r)/ *n.* 花费

❷ 常用短语

be accustomed to 习惯于

carry out 执行，实施

cater for... 满足……的需要

contribute to 造成，促成

daily necessities 日常必需品

daily routine 日常事务

domestic waste 生活垃圾

face enormous challenges 面对巨大挑战

have / grasp the opportunity to... 有 / 抓住……的机会

have a special affection for... 对……怀有特殊感情

improve living standards 提高生活水平

make a living 谋生，维持生计

participate in physical activities 参加体育活动

pay a high price for... 为……付出高昂的代价

perform good deeds 做好事

personal fulfilment 个人成就

personal interests 个人兴趣

public facilities 公共设施

put...to use 使用，利用

satisfy one's needs / demand 满足某人的需求

share the housework 分担家务

strike a balance 达到平衡

take responsibility for... 对……承担责任

throw away 扔掉，丢弃

voluntary work 志愿工作

❸ 写作例句

produce domestic waste 产生生活垃圾；throw away old stuff 扔掉旧东西

- A large amount of **domestic waste** is **produced** because people take **throwing away old stuff** for granted. 因为人们认为扔掉旧东西是理所当然的，所以产生了大量的生活垃圾。

cater for... 满足……的需要

- Some products are not designed with a long life span but to **cater for** people's preference for convenience. 设计某些产品并不是为了长久使用，而是为了满足人们对方便的偏好。

contribute to 造成，促成

- The resource waste caused by the desire to buy new goods **contributes to** a great burden on the environment. 由购买新产品的欲望引起的资源浪费会给环境造成巨大的负担。

pay a high price for... 为……付出高昂的代价

- It is really not necessary to **pay** such **a high price for** the things we do not even need. 对于我们并不需要的东西，真的没有必要付出这么大的代价。

练习 请从方框中选择正确的单词或短语填空，完成句子。

improving	make the first step	affection	opportunity
contribute	make a living	strike a balance	

1 There is still a long way to go in _____ the standard of living in my country.

2 By studying abroad, I can finally _____ of travelling around the world.

3 As a nurse, I have the _____ to meet people from all walks of life.

4 Inflation with rising prices will inevitably _____ to a rise in the cost of living.

5 The greatest joy and ambition for the young may be to _____ from their hobbies.

6 We should _____ between living convenience and energy consumption.

7 Parents have always had a special _____ for their children.

2.2 语法重点

❶ 句子成分

一个英语句子中通常包含不同的句子成分，比较常见的句子成分有：主语、谓语、宾语、表语、定语、状语、补语等。

主语

表示句子的主体或叙述对象。

可以作主语的有：名词、代词、数词、动名词、不定式、名词性从句和名词化的形容词等。

谓语

谓语的位置一般在主语之后，表示主语的动作或状态。

可以做谓语的有：动词、“情态动词+动词”等。

表语

表示主语的身份、性质、特征或状态等。

可以作表语的有：名词、代词、数词、形容词、副词、动名词、不定式、动词过去分词、介词短语和名词性从句等。

宾语

表示动作的承受者。

可以作宾语的有：名词、代词、数词、名词化的形容词、动名词、不定式和名词性从句等。

定语

起修饰、限定作用，表明名词或代词的属性。

可以作定语的有：形容词、名词、名词所有格、数词、代词、动词过去分词、动词现在分词、不定式、介词短语和定语从句等。

状语

起修饰作用，修饰动词、形容词、副词或整个句子。

可以作状语的有：副词、动词过去分词、动词现在分词、不定式、介词短语和状语从句等。

补语

起补充说明的作用，可分为主语补足语和宾语补足语。

可以作补语的有：名词、形容词、副词和介词短语等。

❷ 句子结构分析

A family	includes	parents and children.
冠词 + 名词	动词	名词短语
主语	谓语	宾语

译文：家庭包括父母和孩子。

Many household appliances	bring	convenience	to our daily life.
限定词 + 形容词 + 名词	动词	名词	介词短语
主语	谓语	宾语	状语

译文：许多家用电器给我们的日常生活带来了便利。

To see	is	to believe.
不定式	系动词	不定式
主语	系动词	表语

译文：眼见为实。

There	are	some overpriced restaurants	in the city centre.
代词	be动词	限定词 + 形容词 + 名词	介词短语
引导主语	谓语	主语	状语

译文：市中心有一些价格过高的餐馆。

Two thirds of students	at our school	wear	glasses.
数词 + 介词 + 名词	介词短语	动词	名词
主语	定语	谓语	宾语

译文：我们学校三分之二的学生戴眼镜。

That prices will go up	is	certain.
名词性从句	系动词	形容词
主语	系动词	表语

译文：物价要上涨是肯定的。

After travelling around different countries,	I	think	it	necessary	to settle down.
介词 + 动名词短语	代词	动词	代词	形容词	不定式
状语	主语	谓语	形式宾语	宾语补足语	真正的宾语

译文：在游历了不同的国家之后，我认为有必要安定下来。

Eating healthy food and doing exercise regularly	are	what a healthy lifestyle needs.
并列的动名词短语	系动词	名词性从句
主语	系动词	表语

译文：吃健康的食物并且常规性地锻炼是健康的生活方式所需要的。

The soaring house price	makes	it	hard	for the new graduates	to buy a house	in a few years.
冠词 + 形容词 + 名词短语	动词	代词	形容词	介词短语	不定式短语	介词短语
主语	谓语	形式宾语	宾语补足语	状语	真正的宾语	状语

译文：不断上涨的房价使刚毕业的学生很难在几年内买得起房子。

Shopping	seems	a leisure activity	for women	because they are always excited about it.
动名词	系动词	名词短语	介词短语	状语从句
主语	系动词	表语	状语	状语

译文：购物似乎是女性的休闲活动，因为她们对此总是感到兴奋。

练习 **请写出画线部分的词性及其在句中所作的成分。**

1 There are many supermarkets around my apartment. _____ _____

2 Junk food may damage our health in a long term. _____ _____

3 We held a birthday party for my brother in a fancy restaurant. _____ _____

4 Three meals a day provides the necessary nutrition and energy for our daily activities.

_____ _____

5 Both coffee and tea can make a day refreshing. _____ _____

6 People living in poor families might suffer many difficulties. _____ _____

2.3 衔接方式

❶ meanwhile

表示“与此同时”。

- According to the chart, it is obvious that family expense accounted for the largest proportion of women's spending. **Meanwhile**, personal consumption was the least in the annual expenditures of women.

根据图表，很明显，家庭支出占女性支出的比例是最大的。同时，个人消费在女性年度支出中所占比例最低。

❷ similarly

表示“同样地”，说明前后两者在某一方面具有相似之处。

- Food is bought not because it is a luxury item, but because it serves a basic human need. **Similarly**, clothes and shelter are bought because they are the most essential components of an individual's existence.

  购买食物不是因为它是奢侈品，而是因为它满足了人类的基本需求。同样，购买衣服和住所也是因为它们是个人生存所需的基本要素。

❸ furthermore

表示“此外，而且”。

- Family is an important part of any country. **Furthermore**, family harmony and happiness are the foundation of developing a strong country.

  家庭在任何国家都是一个重要的组成部分。此外，家庭的和谐和幸福是一个国家发展壮大的基础。

❹ specifically

表示“确切地说”。

- I will go to study in Massachusetts Institute of Technology. **Specifically**, I'm going to gain a better knowledge of engineering there. 我将去麻省理工学院学习。确切地说，我会在那里深入学习工程学。

❺ nevertheless

表示“然而”，常用于句首，引出与前面内容形成较大反差的情况。

- Individuals' effort to improve the environment is limited. **Nevertheless**, we can start from producing less waste and driving less.

  个人改善环境的努力是有限的。然而，我们可以从少制造垃圾和少开车做起。

❻ overall

表示“总的来说”，用于描述总体情况或者在结论部分进行总结性陈述。

- **Overall**, I would conclude that video games have a negative impact on young people.

  总的来说，我认为电子游戏对年轻人有负面影响。

练习 **请使用本单元学过的衔接词并以其正确形式填空，完成句子。**

1 According to the graph, women took a larger proportion than men in terms of living in poverty. _____, poor females aged 18–24 accounted for over 20% while the figure for males of the same age group was less than 15%.

2 The percentage of expense on books dropped from 6% to 1%. _____, the spending on furniture went down from 10% to 8%.

3 Overall, it is obvious that there was a gradual increase in global water usage during the period shown. _____, much more water was used in Brazil than in Congo in the year of 2010.

4 Within a decade, there was a decrease of 9% in the proportion of oil usage. _____, the figure doubled to 10% for nuclear energy.

5 There may be great difficulty on the way of success. _____, nothing is impossible to overcome.

6 _____, it is clear that there was an upward trend in the consumption of chicken while that of others decreased.

3 题型讲解

3.1 家庭生活类话题

审题是开始写作任务的第一步，也是十分关键的一步，因为雅思写作考试四项评分标准中的第一项就是：回应写作任务情况（Task Response）。因此，开始写大作文之前，考生应该用4~5分钟的时间分析写作主题及写作要求，这样可以达到事半功倍的效果。



请以下面的题目为例，学习大作文的审题方法及开头段的写作。

Some parents give their children everything or accept whatever their children want to do. Is this good for the children? What could be the consequences for these children when they grow up?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

Write at least 250 words.

❶ 写作主题

- 话题：溺爱孩子的对错及后果
- 主体段1：溺爱孩子是否有好处
- 主体段2：溺爱孩子的后果

❷ 写作要求

- 回答题目中的问题，表明观点
- 提供理由或例证
- 词数：不少于250词

❸ 开头段

开头段构成

background sentence	背景句
rephrase the topic	改写题目
personal opinion	个人观点

开头段示例

background sentence	It is often said that parenting is the most difficult job a person can do. Bringing up children can be a joy, as well as a challenge.
rephrase the topic	It is true that some parents tend to meet all the requirements of their children.
personal opinion	Nevertheless, the negative effects of over-spoiling in childhood can well last until adulthood.

背景句	人们常说养育子女是一个人所做的最困难的工作。抚养孩子可能是一种乐趣，也是一项挑战。
改写题目	诚然，有的父母倾向于满足孩子的所有要求。
个人观点	然而，在童年过分宠溺孩子的负面影响可能会持续到成年。

Tips

在雅思写作大作文的首段中，“背景句”“改写题目”“个人观点”是必有项，其中“背景句”可以写1~2句。有时，大作文首段也包括“写作目的”“文章主旨”和“文章布局”等内容，但不是必有项。

练习 **请阅读下面的题目，并按照要求作答。**

Video games are very popular among the young today. This might be a reason for the increase in violence and crime in most major cities of the world. What's your opinion on this point of view?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

1 这道题目的写作主题是：

A the growing popularity of video games

B the negative influence of video games

C the increasing violence and crime in major cities

2 请将开头段的句子排序，并指出每句话的作用。

_____ They found the video games are especially exciting and attractive.

_____ Some have growing concerns that these games may encourage their children to act aggressively in reality.

_____ Nowadays, many young people spend a large portion of their time playing video games on computer.

_____ In my opinion, we should make an in-depth research on the effects of the games.

_____ However, most parents worry about the effects brought by these games on their children.

3.2 曲线图 1

❶ 写作要求

- 把握时间：尽量控制在20分钟以内。
- 词数限制：小作文不能少于150词，否则会被扣分。比较恰当的长度是165词左右。
- 准备工作：用5分钟的时间分析图表、筛选关键信息、列出文章段落结构。
- 注意文体：不需要发表自己的观点或解释图表变化的原因，只需要直接表述所看到的事实。
- 句子和段落：写作时一定要清楚地划分段落，必须包含开头段和主体段。表述数据的句子要富于变化，可灵活使用主动句、被动句、there be句型、it强调句等句型，避免连续使用同一种句型，也不要通篇使用简单句。

❷ 分析曲线图的要点

- 总体变化趋势：上升、下降、稳定、上下波动等
- 极值：最高值、最低值
- 其他特殊节点：起始值、终止值、交叉值等

❸ 开头段

开头段需要对图表进行总体介绍，一般包括两部分。首先介绍图表类型和图表内容。然后介绍图表体现的总体趋势，一般讲述一个或两个总体趋势，注意此处不需要体现具体数据。

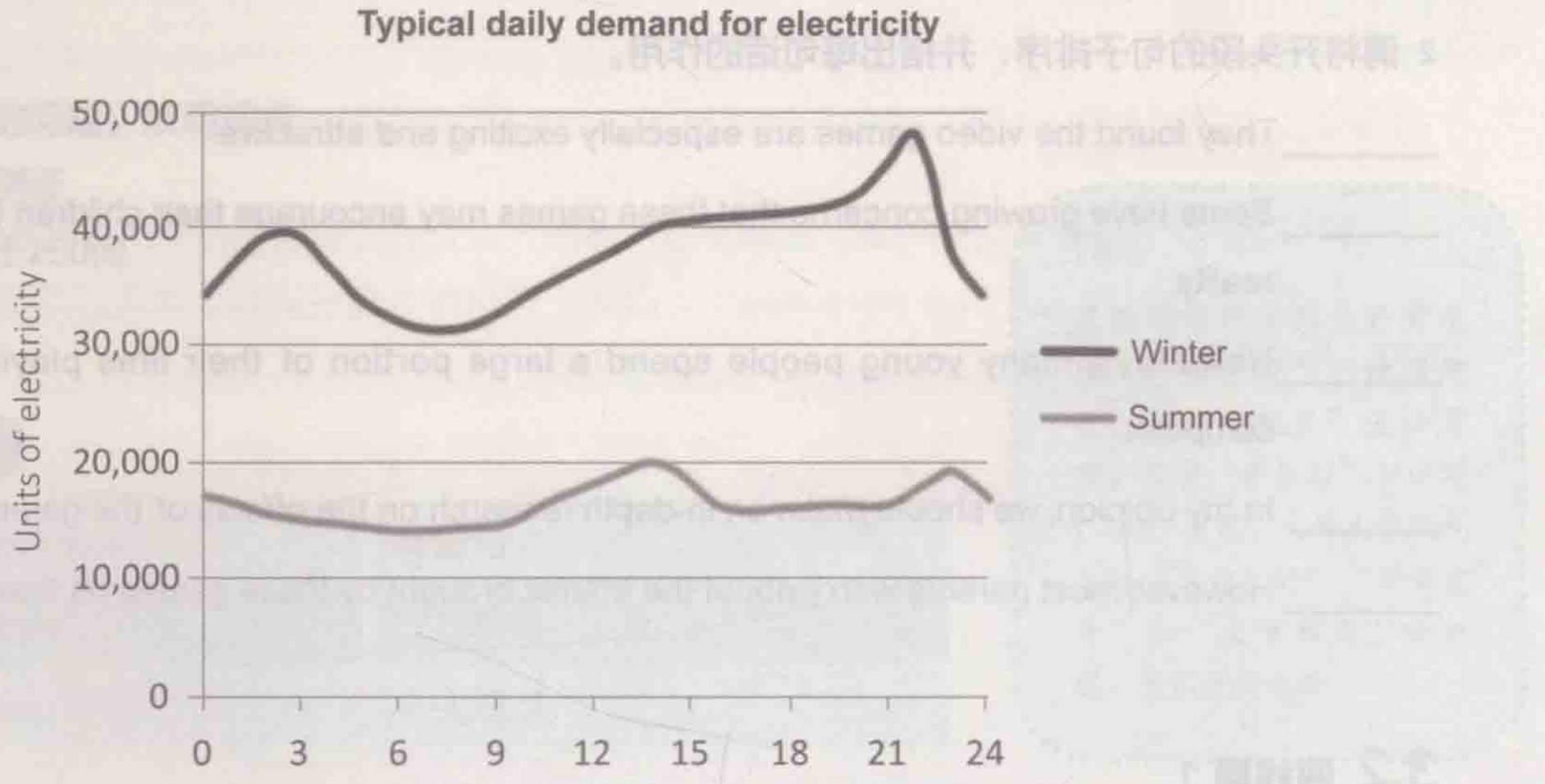
Tips

介绍曲线图说明的现象时，可以对题目进行改写，但不能完全照抄题目中的用词，否则考官最后计算作文词数时可能会剔除这些文字，导致作文因不足150词而失分。

请以下面的题目为例，学习曲线图题开头段的写作。

The graph below shows the demand for electricity in England during typical days in winter and summer.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.



开头段示例1

The given line graph provides information about **the daily electricity demand in two seasons.** Overall, people living in England use a larger amount of electricity in winter than in summer.	**图表类型** **图表内容** 总体趋势

所给曲线图给出了两个季节的日用电需求。总的来说，英国人在冬天的用电量比夏天大。

开头段示例2

The line graph shows **the consumption of electricity in a typical day in cold and hot seasons.** It is noticeable that electricity demand in winter was much higher than in summer.	**图表类型** **图表内容** 总体趋势

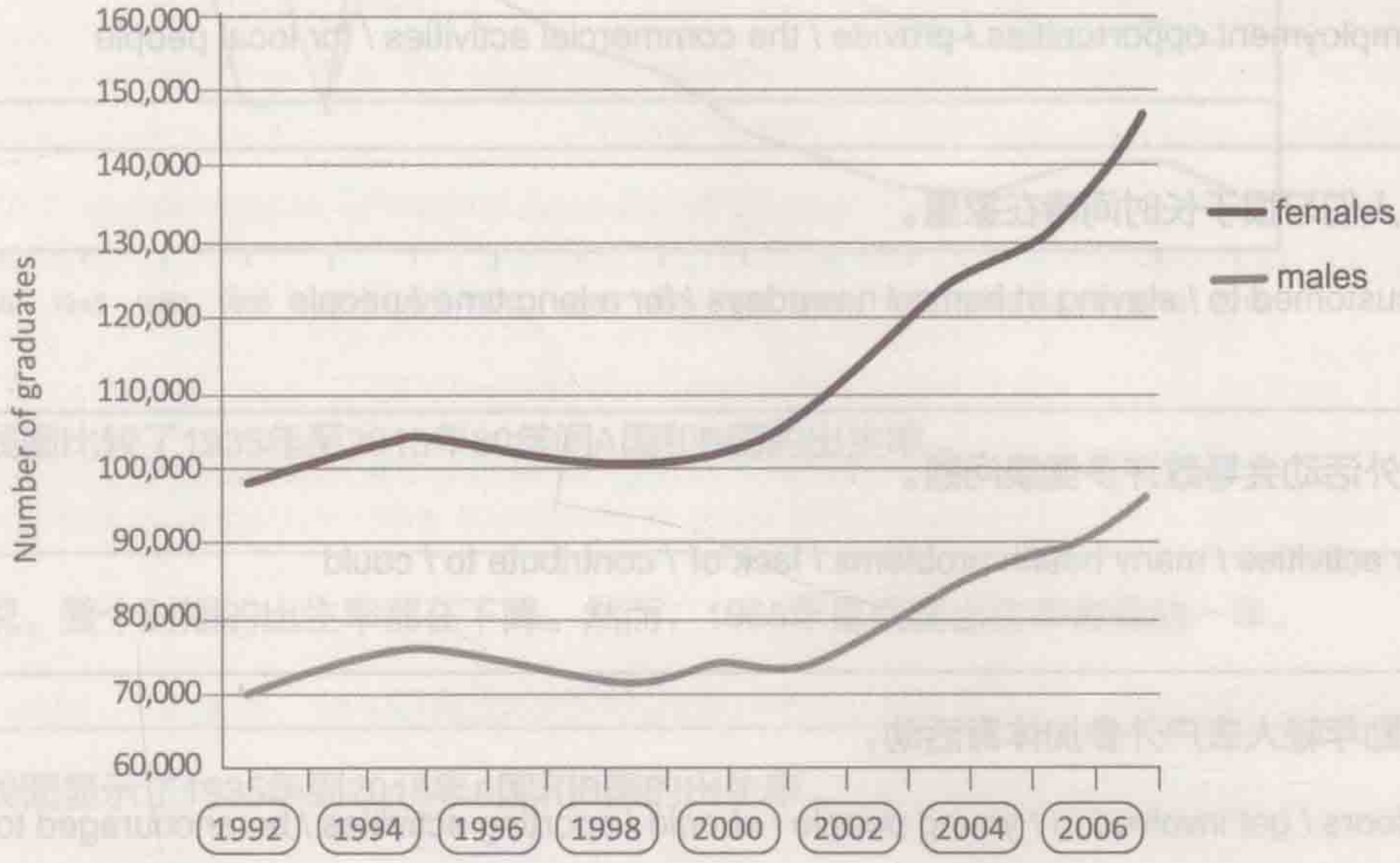
该曲线图显示了在冷热季节中一天的用电量。值得注意的是，冬季的用电需求比夏季高得多。

练习 **请根据题目，将所给英文表达重新排序，完成开头段句子。**

The graph below shows the number of university graduates in Canada from 1992 to 2006.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features and make comparisons where relevant.

University graduates, Canada, 1992–2006



1	图表类型和图表内容	in Canada / compares / between 1992 and 2006 / in two different genders / the line graph / the number of graduates
2	总体趋势1	in Canada / over the period shown / the number of graduates / increased largely / it is important to note that
3	总体趋势2	the number of / in terms of a gradual growth / although / show a similar trend / was higher / the two genders / graduated females / than that of males

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 课后练习

4.1 请根据中文提示，将所给英文表达重新排序，组成一个语义完整的句子。

1 购物中心在推动当地经济增长方面发挥着重要作用。

driving the economic growth / in / an important role / of local area / play / shopping centres

2 商业活动为当地人提供了更多的就业机会。

more employment opportunities / provide / the commercial activities / for local people

3 现在，人们习惯于长时间待在家里。

are accustomed to / staying at home / nowadays / for a long time / people

4 缺乏户外活动会导致许多健康问题。

outdoor activities / many health problems / lack of / contribute to / could

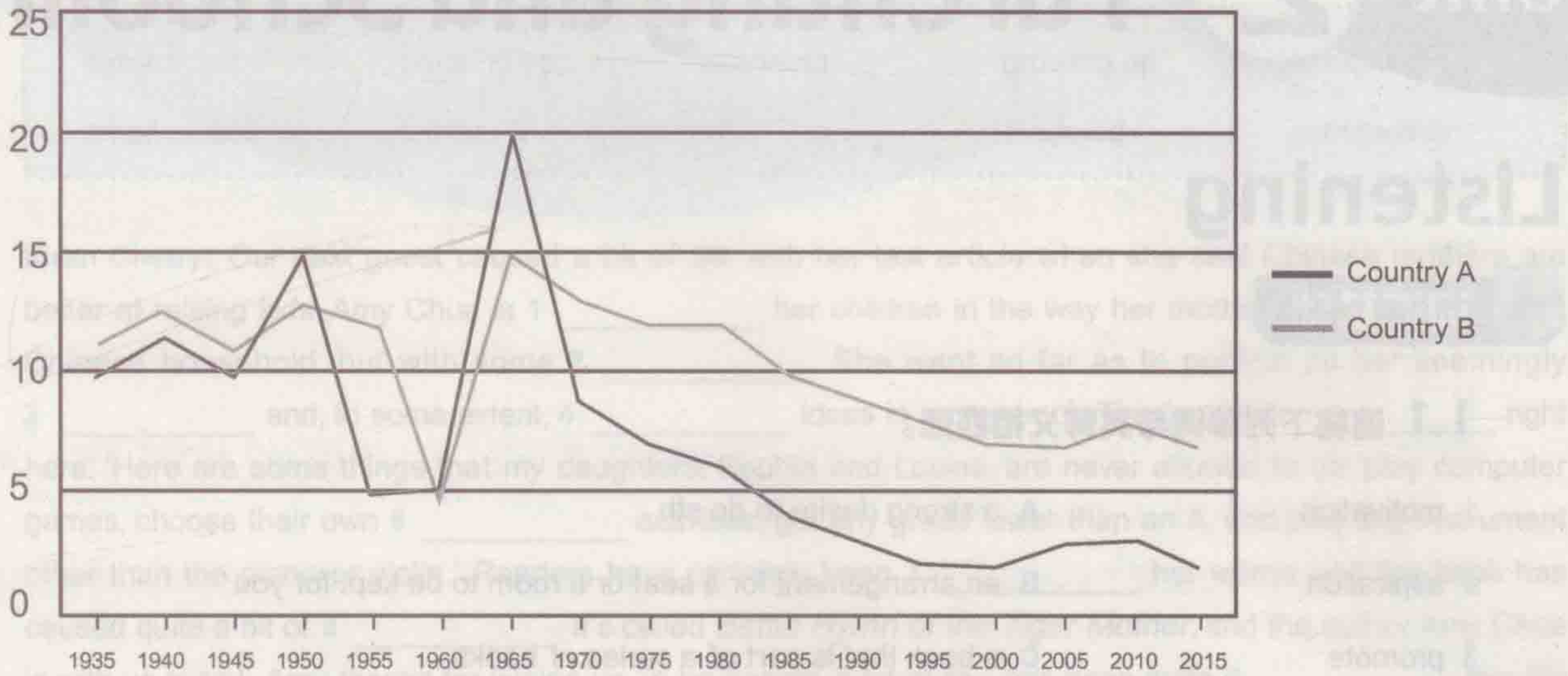
5 应该鼓励年轻人去户外参加体育活动。

go outdoors / get involved in / young people / should / sporting activities / be encouraged to / and

4.2 请根据题目及中文提示，写出开头段的句子。

The graph below compares changes in the birth rates of Country A and Country B between 1935 and 2015.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.



1 这张曲线图比较了1935年至2015年80年间A国和B国的出生率。

2 总的来说，整个时期的出生率都在下降。然而，1965年是两国出生率最高的一年。

3 这幅曲线图显示了1935年到2015年A国和B国的出生率。

4 总的来说，在这80年里，两个国家的出生率普遍下降，在大多数年份B国的出生率都高于A国。

Unit 2 Parenting and Schooling

Listening

1 词汇基础

1.1 请将下列单词与其释义相匹配。

1 motivation	A a strong desire to do sth
2 aspiration	B an arrangement for a seat or a room to be kept for you
3 promote	C a book that is part of a series of books
4 abstract	D to help sth happen or develop
5 volume	E a short piece of writing containing the main ideas in a document
6 reservation	F a reason for acting

1.2 请根据自己的理解，将下列知识或能力按照学习途径分类。

A the way to calculate the volume of a cube

B the key distinction between well designed experiments and observational studies

C the process of doing laundry

D identify a country where more than 75 per cent of women in labour force are active in agriculture

E learn to speak

F develop a healthy eating habit

Parenting	Schooling



1.3 请从方框中选择正确的单词或短语填空，完成短文，然后听录音确定答案。

extract	bringing up	discussing	growing up	extracurricular
small problems	familiar to	radical	outdated	controversy

Kiran Chetry: Our next guest caused a bit of stir with her last article when she said Chinese mothers are better at raising kids. Amy Chua is 1 _____ her children in the way her mother raised her, in a strict Chinese household, but with some 2 _____. She went so far as to publish all her seemingly 3 _____ and, to some extent, 4 _____ ideas in a new book. This is a(n) 5 _____ right here. 'Here are some things that my daughters, Sophia and Louisa, are never allowed to do: play computer games, choose their own 6 _____ activities, get any grade lower than an A, and play any instrument other than the piano or violin.' Readers have certainly been 7 _____ her words, and the book has caused quite a bit of 8 _____. It's called *Battle Hymn of the Tiger Mother*, and the author Amy Chua is with us today...Amy, thanks for joining us. To be honest, a lot of this has been quite 9 _____ me. My father is from Nepal, and a lot of what you wrote is so typical of Asian culture. I mean, children 10 _____ in our Asian culture are expected to listen to their parents for a far greater degree than kids in the West, and parents are more interested in what they expect from their kids, rather than what their kids want.

1.4 请听一段对话，圈出你听到的单词或短语的原形。

term	apply to	standard	experience	affect	immigrant	motivation
advocate	object to	generalise	index	reject	fiction	

场景词汇

affect /ə'fekt/ *v.* 影响
promote /prə'məut/ *v.* 促进
aspiration /ˌæspə'reɪʃn/ *n.* 抱负
motivation /ˌməutɪ'veɪʃn/ *n.* 动机
publication /ˌpʌblɪ'keɪʃn/ *n.* 出版物
fiction /'fɪkʃn/ *n.* 小说
journal /'dʒɜ:nl/ *n.* 期刊
index /'ɪndeks/ *n.* 索引
extract /'ekstrækt/ *n.* 摘录
photocopy /'fəutəukɒpi/ *n.* 影印本，复印件
printer /'prɪntə(r)/ *n.* 打印机
typewriter /'taɪpraɪtə(r)/ *n.* 打字机

overdue /ˌəuvə'dju:/ *adj.* 过期的
mature /mə'tʃuə(r)/ *adj.* 成熟的
radical /'rædɪkl/ *adj.* 激进的
checklist /'tʃeklɪst/ *n.* 清单
touch screen /'tʌtʃ skri:n/ *n.* 触摸屏
object to 反对
apply...to... 将……应用于……
pay fines 交罚金
coursebook /'kɔ:sbuk/ *n.* 教材
date of expiry 过期时间
reference book 参考书目
reservation list 预约单

2 能力培养

2.1 了解表格填空题

雅思听力考试中的表格填空题包括表格（Form）和图表（Table）形式的题目。表格填空题属于比较基础的题型，表格或图表中会给出一些已知信息，并留出一些空格，要求考生根据所听录音补全表格或图表中空缺的内容。

2.2 解题步骤

1. 仔细阅读题目要求，确定要求填空的单词及 / 或数字的数量范围（如：*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.*）。
2. 快速阅读表格或图表中的已知信息，如黑体字、斜体字、数字、并列信息等，并预测要填的信息的范畴和词性。
3. 重点关注题目中的关键信息（如表头、数字、人名、地名等），预测答案在原文中可能出现的位置。
4. 仔细听录音中信号词前后的信息，然后作答。

2.3 巩固练习

练习1 请快速阅读下面的题目，圈出表格中的关键信息。

Complete the table below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN ONE WORD AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.*

Items	Where	Average price
cosmetics	in the 1 _____	about 80 pounds
2 _____	on the 3rd floor	3 _____
4 _____	in the Women's Zone	5 _____

练习2 请预测练习1中每个空格处要填的答案的范畴和词性。

Example Question 1 地点名词

1 Question 2 _____

2 Question 3 _____

3 Question 4 _____

4 Question 5 _____

练习3 **请选出练习1中每个空格处可能要填的正确答案。**

1 Question 1

A children　　B hall　　C 2nd floor

2 Question 2

A clothes　　B Amy　　C parents

3 Question 3

A 40 cents　　B 85　　C 95 pounds

4 Question 4

A chairs　　B maps　　C shoes

5 Question 5

A sixty-four　　B 105 pounds　　C fifty-five pounds

3 题型讲解

3.1 高频场景

教育包括来自家庭、学校和社会等各个层面的教育。而在雅思听力考试中，教育类场景主要考查学校教育，四个Part中都很有可能出现这个场景的题目。考查的题型主要是填空题和选择题，考生需要熟练掌握与教育类场景相关的词汇。Part 4中还会涉及一些专业课的讨论，但是作为考点的词汇不会特别难。该场景下的高频考点包括：

- 课程选择
- 新生入学介绍
- 图书馆的使用
- 课题研究
- 作业讨论
- 培训课程

3.2 题型演练

练习1 **请听两段独白，并按照题目要求作答。**

Complete the table below.

*Write **ONE WORD ONLY** for each answer.*

	Lorraine	Martine
Attitudes toward Schooling	did not care about 1 _____	went to a good 5 _____
Parents' Backgrounds	father drove a 2 _____	mother's major was 6 _____
First Jobs	worked for a 3 _____	worked as a 7 _____
Changed Jobs	opened over 4 _____ shops	fell in love with 8 _____

练习2 请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。

Complete the table below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS** for each answer.*

Materials	Problems	Ways
1 _____	hard to find	download books from some 2 _____
books	expensive to buy all of them	3 _____ approach
4 _____	5 take _____	check the 6 _____
7 _____	not available in the library and the 8 _____	ask the 9 _____ or 10 _____ others' coursebooks

4 课后练习

4.1 请根据题目中的关键信息，预测每一道题的答案范畴和词性。

Complete the table below.

*Write **ONE WORD ONLY** for each answer.*

	Emma Jones	David Netanyahu
Present Occupations	1 _____	6 _____
Majors	2 _____	7 _____
Influenced by	3 _____	8 _____
Work Experiences	work for a 4 _____	9 _____
Interests	5 _____	10 _____

4.2 请听一段对话，并按照要求完成4.1中的题目。

4.3 请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。

Complete the table below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.*

Course	1 _____
Course Pack	reading materials, audio sections and instructional 2 _____
Quit	3 over _____ to decide
Enrolment Fee	4 _____
Requirement	turn in a 5 _____ after 6 _____
7 _____	log in an online forum and get advice from 8 _____

Reading

1 词汇基础

1.1 请将下列单词与其释义相匹配。

1 nurture	A to give sb information so that they understand sth better
2 enlighten	B to do sth as a reaction to sth that sb has said or done
3 accompany	C to care for and protect sb / sth while they are growing and developing
4 respond	D to express your approval or admiration for sb / sth
5 praise	E to travel or go somewhere with sb

1.2 请从方框中选择正确的单词并以其正确形式填空，完成句子。

morality　perseverance　intelligence　inspiration　endurance

1 His family background and his parents' marriage would be a(n) _____ to his music composition.

2 The only way to improvement is through hard work and dogged _____.

3 _____ is not just the ability to bear a hard thing, but to turn it into glory.

4 A person with higher _____ tends to perform better than the average in some particular technology fields.

5 It is the parents' duty to teach their children _____ to help transform them into functional adults in society.

1.3 请阅读文章，将方框中的学习方法与下列表述相匹配。

Three Tips to Be a More Effective Learner

No.1 Keep Learning and Trying New Things

A good way to become a more effective learner is to simply keep learning. According to an article in *Nature*, the amount of grey matter in certain areas of the brain increased for people who learned a new skill, but as soon as they stopped practising the new skill, the grey matter disappeared.

So if you are learning a new language, it is important to keep practising what you have learned. Otherwise, you will soon forget it. This 'use-it-or-lose-it' phenomenon involves a brain process known as 'pruning'. Certain pathways in the brain are maintained while others are eliminated. If you want to retain the new information you have just learned, keep practising and rehearsing it.

No.2 Learn in Multiple Ways

Another good way to learn is to focus on learning in more than one way. For example, instead of just listening to a podcast, which involves auditory learning, find a way to rehearse the information both verbally and visually. This might involve taking notes, or drawing a mind map, etc. By learning in more than one way, you're further cementing the knowledge in your mind.

According to research, the more regions of the brain store data about a subject, the more interconnection there is. And more interconnection means more opportunities for a learner to pull up all of those related bits of data from the multiple storage areas in response to a single cue.

No.3 Teach Someone Else What You Have Learned

Educators have long noted that one of the best ways to learn something is to teach it to someone else. Do you still remember the science presentation you did in your primary school? By teaching it to the rest of the class, you gained much more from the assignment. You can apply the same principle today by sharing your newly learned skills and knowledge with others.

You may start by translating the information into your own words. This process alone helps solidify new knowledge in your brain. Next, find a way to share what you've learned. Some ideas include writing a blog post, creating a podcast, or participating in a group discussion.

A Keep Learning and Trying New Things

B Learn in Multiple Ways

C Teach Someone Else What You Have Learned

1 Listen to the radio and take down notes at the same time.

2 Tell your classmates how to use the new theory to solve an equation.

3 Memorise new vocabulary to improve your English as a habit.

1.4 请用英文列举出其他提高学习效率的方法，可与学习伙伴们分享。

主题词汇

preschool /'pri:sku:l/ *adj.* 学龄前的
day care 日托
vocational /vəu'keɪʃənl/ *adj.* 职业的
applied /ə'plaɪd/ *adj.* 应用的
strategic /strə'ti:dʒɪk/ *adj.* 战略上的
interactive /ˌɪntər'æktɪv/ *adj.* 交互式的
innate /ɪ'neɪt/ *adj.* 先天的；固有的
prodigy /'prɒdədʒi/ *n.* 年轻的天才，神童
nurture /'nɜ:tʃə(r)/ *v.* / *n.* 养育
indoctrinate /ɪn'dɒktrɪneɪt/ *v.* 灌输
edify /'edɪfaɪ/ *v.* 教诲
enlighten /ɪn'laɪtn/ *v.* 启发；教导
custodian /kʌ'stəudiən/ *n.* 监护人
perseverance /ˌpɜ:sə'vɪərəns/ *n.* 耐性；坚持不懈
endurance /ɪn'djuərəns/ *n.* 忍耐力；持久
morality /mə'rælәti/ *n.* 道德
admission /əd'mɪʃn/ *n.* 录取
personalise /'pɜ:sənəlaɪz/ *v.* 使个性化
long-distance learning 远程教育
continuing education 继续教育

2 能力培养

定位和辨别事实信息

在第一单元中，我们已经简要了解了雅思阅读考试中的说明性文章。这类文章以说明客观事实为主，以议论与描写为辅，旨在陈述所要说明的事物的特征，以及与之相关的道理，强调知识性和信息的丰富度。说明性文章的陈述方式深入浅出、条理分明、例证充分、合乎逻辑，能够帮助读者客观地认识事物，掌握相应的信息。我们一般称客观信息为事实（facts），与议论文中的观点（opinions）相对应。

事实信息就是能被各种证据证实的信息，例如：The earth rotates around the sun.（地球绕着太阳转。）描述的是自然规律，属于事实。而I like singing more than dancing.（比起跳舞，我更喜欢唱歌。）表达的是个人爱好，属于观点。除了说明性文章之外，其他类型的文章中也会涉及事实信息，比如数据、描述、原因、结果、流程等信息。

判断句子信息是否属于事实可以帮助我们更好地完成雅思阅读考试中的匹配题、判断题和选择题等题型。

Tips

有些单词可以看作某一类事实信息的指示词，比如数字，在看到60,000,000、95%、two thirds等数字时，就应该将其归为数字类的事实信息。其他可指示事实信息的关键词包括cause，reason，finding，effect，measurement，conclusion，reaction，problem，description等。

任务1 **请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。**

Grasha's Teaching Style Inventory

'What is my role in my classroom? What are my strengths and weaknesses? How should I develop my own teaching style and integrate it with effective classroom management skills?' These are the questions teachers frequently ask themselves, as they start their careers, and occasionally pause along the way to reflect on job performance. Grasha's teaching style inventory can serve as a tool to help teachers evaluate themselves to know better about their teaching styles.

Anthony F. Grasha is a famous professor of psychology at the University of Cincinnati in the US. He studied the continuously changing relationship between teachers and learning in college classrooms and thus established the classic 'five teaching styles'. His groundbreaking book, *Teaching with Style*, was a guide for teachers and a tool for colleagues, administrators and students to systematically evaluate an instructor's effectiveness in the classroom.

Grasha recognised that the approach to evaluating a teacher's classroom performance must be consistent and formal. He also believed that any system designed to help teachers improve their instructional skills requires a simple classification system. So he developed a teaching style inventory that has since been adopted and modified by followers.

Expert: Similar to a coach, experts share knowledge, demonstrate their expertise, advise students, and provide feedback to improve understanding and promote learning.

Formal Authority: Authoritative teachers incorporate the traditional lecture format and share many of the same features as experts, but with less student interaction.

Personal Model: Incorporates blended teaching styles that match the best techniques with the appropriate learning scenarios and students in an adaptive format.

Facilitator: Designs learning activities and manages classroom projects while providing information and offering feedback to help critical thinking.

Delegator: Organises group learning, observes students, provides discussions, and promotes interaction between groups and among individuals to achieve learning objectives.

Although he developed specific teaching styles, Grasha suggested that teachers should not box themselves into a single category. Instead, he encouraged the teachers to play multiple roles in the classroom. And he believed most teachers have some combination of all or most of the classic teaching styles.

1 请在文中画出与下列表述相对应的信息。

1) the name of the five teaching styles' founder

2) the acceptance of the theory

3) the names of the five fundamental teaching roles

2 请分析下列表述属于事实（fact）还是观点（opinion）。

1) Anthony F. Grasha, a noted professor of psychology at the University of Cincinnati, established the five teaching styles we know of today.

2) Despite setting out specific teaching styles, Grasha believed teachers shouldn't confine themselves to any single category and encouraged them to play multiple roles in the classroom.

3 请根据文章将下列教学形式与其对应的内容相匹配。

1) Expert	A Giving serious lectures by cutting down the interaction with students
2) Formal authority	B Asking students to work in groups to achieve their goal
3) Personal model	C Encouraging students to learn actively, leaving room for critical thinking
4) Facilitator	D Offering students professional knowledge through illustrations, suggestions, etc
5) Delegator	E Catering to students' needs depending on the learning scenarios

任务2 **请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。**

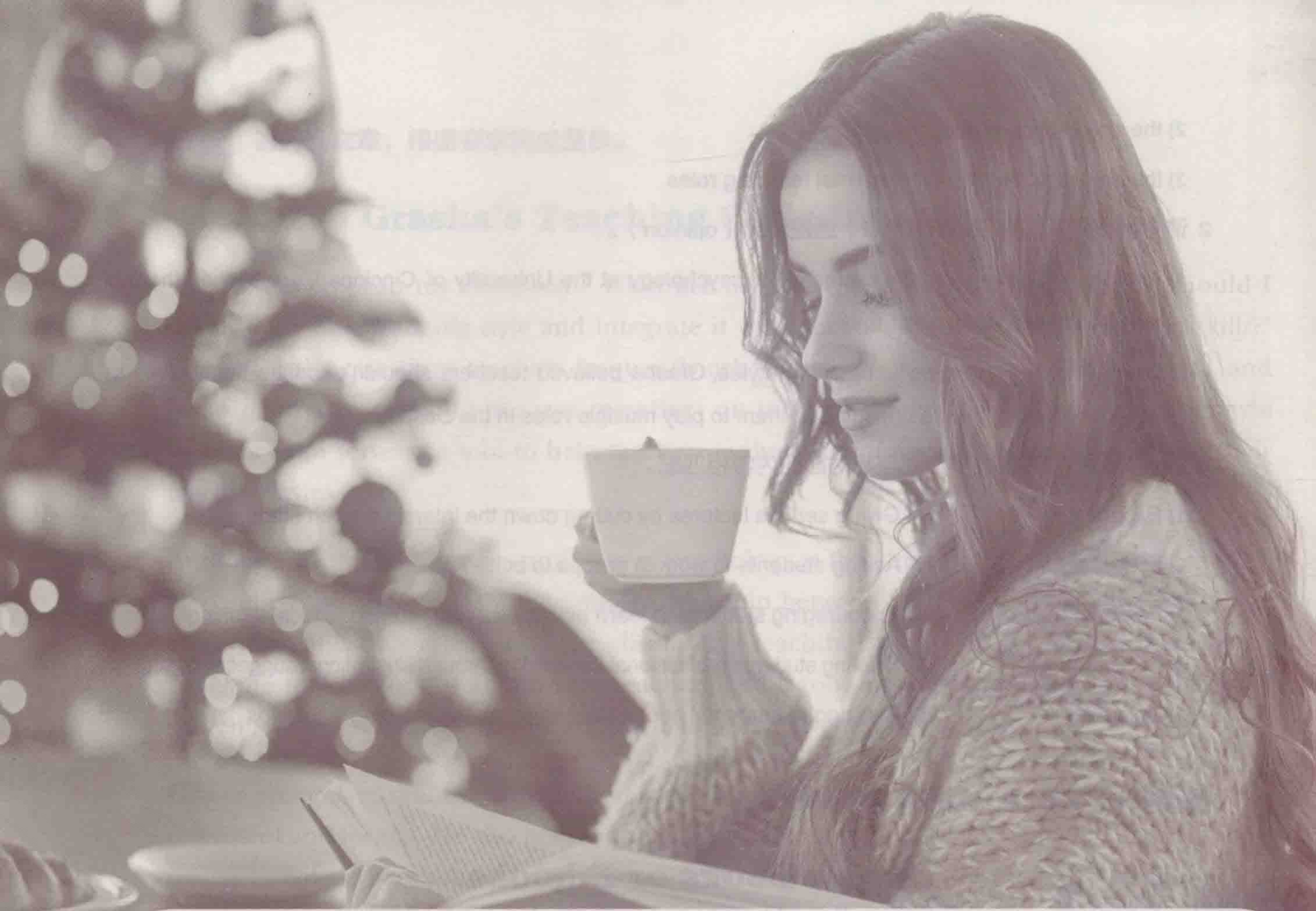
Paper Books or E-books

Last year, I attended a university class and discussed the topic of 'paper books or e-books' with my classmates. The discussion was quite lively, but was left unresolved due to several pros and cons of both types of books and the clashing personal preferences of different students.

According to an article from *LA Times*, a study conducted by an American linguistics professor discovered that 92% of 300 college students in the United States and the other three countries preferred physical paper books over e-books and other electrical devices. Many participants in the study reported that they had headaches and eye strain when staring at a screen for hours and they are easily distracted when using online textbook tools.

I believe the 92 percentage is true, not just because it is the result of a study. Paper books can bring another perspective to your reading experience through the unique smell of the book, the feel of the pages between your fingertips and the physical sense of progress being made throughout your reading, whether it's a nonfiction textbook or a fictitious novel.

However, pleasure comes at a price. Physical books certainly aren't cheap and take up a lot of space. As a person who has to move to many places and has a love for the written word, it can be a big headache to move my own mini library from one place to another, not to mention the money to buy those books. On the other hand, e-books are generally known to be more affordable than traditional books while taking up less space. So sometimes e-books seemed quite attractive for a book nerd like me, but those benefits didn't keep my interest for long.



Nothing beats the comforting feeling of curling up with a hot cup of tea and a book. Besides, physical textbooks are handier because they can help people retain information better, according to some studies.

Every time I see the rare books at Hill Memorial Library, I always think about how amazing it is to be able to hold and touch those books. Some of them date back to the 1500s and are written in Latin, while some are more interesting than anything I have ever seen. They are all so rich in history and information. The experience of touching and reading them is something I could never obtain if I just went online to read the e-book copy. For mostly these reasons, I would think it important to pick up a paper book every once in a while, even if one doesn't care for reading.

1 请将下列表述与其相应的概述相匹配。

1) Many respondents cited the headaches and eye strain associated with staring at e-books or electronic screens for several hours, as well as the distraction caused by using online textbook tools.

2) Paper brings you another reading experience, manipulating your senses with the unique smell of the book, as well as the feel of the pages between your fingers.

3) They (physical books) are also bulky and take up a lot of space.

4) As technological advances have made e-books cheaper, people are more willing to take advantage of them, recognising their advantages over traditional books that take up so much space.

A the reason why people prefer e-books now

B an additional benefit of paper books

C one of the disadvantages of paper books

D the negative impact of e-books on people

2 请用自己的话总结作者的观点，并在文中用横线画出支持该观点的三个事实信息。

3 题型讲解

分类匹配题

在雅思阅读考试中，分类匹配题是指将各类信息与对应的类别相匹配的题目。各类信息可能是对事实信息的辨别，也可能是对不同观点的辨析，包括学者观点、动植物特征、社会现象、实验对象、理论定义等。分类匹配题的考查形式通常是将两个相似或相关的对象进行对比，要求考生判断某一项表述是针对其中某个对象、两者兼有，还是两者都不具备。

解答分类匹配题时，可以先画出每项表述中的关键词，以便阅读时快速有效地定位目标信息。阅读过程中可用不同字母（如A或B）对目标信息描述的对象进行标注，最后通过标注的字母来判断某项表述是对应某个对象（如标注为A）、两者兼有（如标注为A+B），还是两者都不具备（如不标注字母）。

任务1 请画出方框中信息在文章中的对应处，并标记A–D。

Epstein's Theory of Parent Involvement

There are some big names in the research and theory of family-school partnership. When it comes to theorising about parental involvement, Joyce Epstein is one of them. In Epstein's opinion, both schools and families are responsible for the socialisation of the child. Concepts of family-like school and school-like family are used to stress that the family needs to recognise that a child is a learner to whom the importance of school, homework and learning in general needs to be pointed out, while the school is to make every child feel as special, accepted and included as it is within the family. And similar principles go also for the community level and it's interaction with both families and schools.

The framework of parent involvement proposed by Epstein and her colleagues includes six main types of activities that connect families, schools, and communities: parenting, communicating, volunteering, learning at home, decision-making, and collaboration with the community.

A common responsibility for children's growth for schools and families

B family's and school's roles in promoting children's awareness of being a learner

C the application of the theory to communities

D six elements of parent involvement

任务2 请阅读文章，判断下列表述是否与作者的观点相符。相符请画√，不符请画×。

Sheridan and Kratochwill's Model of Family-school Partnership

To analyse various factors influencing and promoting the overall child development, Sheridan and Kratochwill use a perspective of family-school partnership. Their research primarily focuses on the interweaving roles of the two key agents in education and socialisation: family and school. Analysing the specific aspects of the family-school partnership, Sheridan and Kratochwill put a special stress on the two of them: collaborative relationships and shared responsibility for the educational outcomes.

Trust is essential in the collaborative approach to schooling issues between the family and the school because it can open the door to good and sincere communication. Only if both of the partners see each other as equal can their efforts jointly contribute to the best outcomes for children.

1 Children have a significant role to play in the family-school partnership. _____

2 Families and schools are bonded with each other in the partnership. _____

3 A strong trust between families and schools is essential to this approach. _____

任务3 请根据任务1和2的文章，将下列表述与方框中的选项相匹配。

A Epstein's theory of parent involvement

B Sheridan and Kratochwill's model of family-school partnership

C both theories

D neither theory

1 Both schools and parents share the responsibility of raising children.

2 Children's role as a constant learner needs to be reinforced from time to time.

3 Teachers' teaching styles would affect children's growth.

4 There should be mutual trust between schools and families.

5 Schools need to provide children with a chance to feel distinguished.

任务4 **请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。**

Offline Learning vs Online Learning

With the significant rise of e-learning in educational organisations, more and more learners choose to learn through online learning platforms instead of learning in the classroom. What are the differences between online learning and offline learning? Which do you prefer? How much do you know about the online learning platforms? The information below will help you know more about the advantages and disadvantages of online and offline learning.

Online learning platforms refer to a system that allows learners to take a course without having to attend a classroom. It offers meaningful learning opportunities through different teaching methods. To attract more learners to register, schools and educational organisations are introducing all kinds of learning methods for all the courses. Nevertheless, learners need to be aware of their expectations and the different characteristics of online learning and offline learning before making the decision.

Flexibility

The total time one needs to devote to study is a critical consideration. If you have a busy schedule, consider carefully and choose what is more flexible.

One advantage of online courses is that their excellent selection suits you with time commitments to your work and family. The classes blend well with your schedule to allow registration at the best time for you. The courses usually follow the designed weekly plan at a specific time and you do not have to show up for a lecture. Besides, you can log in to read the course resources, taking part in the class debates and finishing homework any time at your convenience before the following week.

On the other end, offline training works best for learners with plenty of free time. It provides flexibility to the schools as well. The plans can include either evening classes or one-time weekly lectures. Nevertheless, if you have a full-time job, you should weigh the ease to commute to campus.

Discipline and Motivation

Of course, to complete all the courses successfully, both online learning and offline learning demand self-discipline from learners. But apart from that, online learning courses demand high motivation as the classes call for learners to continue their reading and coursework in a period of time. So it is vital to develop the tactics to stay updated with the coursework.

On the other side, offline training is beneficial to many learners on discipline. The tight plan of appearing for lectures sometimes in a week keeps learners busy. In addition, the regular one-on-one interactions with teachers help a lot. For instance, students get chances to be reminded



about approaching tasks. However, there is a high tendency to delay working on the long homework.

Social Relations

Social relationship and interaction is a significant factor in one's personal growth. So before deciding between online learning and offline learning, ask some questions about your learning style. For example, must you learn together with your instructors and peers to be successful? Or else do you do well in a free learning environment? Then choose the one that may help you have a better social relationship and interaction with your instructors and peers.

The social interaction is not frequent during the online courses but occurs often, with the most common practice being through video discussions or online posts. Besides, some training provides videos recorded during on-campus learners' lectures.

Offline learning is, of course, much better in terms of human interactions. So for those who perform better by interacting with the instructors face-to-face, offline learning is a better choice.

Classify the following as character of

A offline learning

B online learning

C both learning approaches

D neither learning approach

1 Self-discipline and motivation are needed.

2 A large amount of free time is required.

3 Social relations are involved in the learning process.

4 Students can access the recorded video to review what they have learned.

4 课后练习

请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

Women Spend More Time on Housework and Childcare than Men

The topic of differing gender roles in the household is more and more discussed. A new research looking at how couples spend their time after the birth of their first child suggests that women are more focused on their child-rearing and household duties while men tend to engage in more leisure activities. Even when husband and wife set out to share the workload equally, women still tend to shoulder more work related to the house and child-rearing.

A new university study aims to find out just how much time women put into childcare and household chores versus men in couples wherein both partners are highly educated and qualify as breadwinners. There were 182 couples participating in the study and they were typically wealthy, highly educated, and in paid employment. The data were sourced through the New Parents Project, a study analysing the development of family relationships after the birth of a first child. Therefore, the researchers decided to focus on the couples' activities during the first three postpartum months, which is a crucial period for gender role expectations to affect the new families but currently understudied. They noted a significant contrast between the way in which women and men divided their time during that period, and such imbalances were especially visible at weekends.

In order to understand just how much time each partner spent on leisure activities versus childcare and household chores, the researchers asked them both to keep minute-by-minute time diaries. This allowed them to see how new mothers and fathers divided their time on the same day, and enabled them to compare the results for workdays versus days off.

On average, men and women seemed to spend a roughly equal amount of time caring for their child and doing household chores on workdays, although the mothers still worked slightly more than the fathers. However, on days off and weekends, the researchers noted significant differences. They saw that for 35 per cent of the time in which women were doing housework, the men were engaged in leisure activities. The same did not hold true for women, who engaged in leisure activities for 19 per cent of the time that men spent engaging in routine

housework. The researchers discovered that when there is more time available on the weekend and parents are not so pressed to get everything done, the emergence of gendered patterns and inequality appear where women do a lot more housework and childcare while men relax.

Overall, the study reports that fathers had significantly more time in leisure on the non workday compared to mothers. Fathers relaxed for 47 per cent of the time that their partners were looking after the child, while mothers did the same for only 16 per cent of the time that their partners were performing childcare duties.

Classify the following as character of

A mothers

B fathers

C both parents

D neither of the parents

1 In current social patterns, more childcare pressure is put on them.

2 In the project, they were asked to keep a daily journal of their activities.

3 They devoted less time to childcare when kids grow to adolescence.

4 They do more housework and childcare than their partners on weekends.

5 They tend to engage more time in leisure activities on weekends.

Speaking

1 词汇基础

1.1 请将下列单词与其释义相匹配。

1 distraction　　A the process of planning sth or putting a plan into operation in a skilful way

2 focus　　B sth that you hope to achieve

3 goal　　C a thing that takes your attention away from what you are doing or thinking about

4 reward　　D a thing that you are given because you have done sth good, worked hard, etc

5 strategy　　E to give attention, effort, etc to one particular subject, situation or person rather than another

1.2 请将方框中的内容分类。

A put off assignments that you don't like to do

B avoid starting difficult assignments

C set goals and put them in order of importance

D use a calendar to plan your time

E spend much time playing video games instead of studying

F remove distractions, such as phones, games and the Internet

G give yourself rewards for finishing your work

H text friends during the class

I divide big assignments into smaller tasks

J listen to music and chat online while doing homework

Study strategies	Bad study habits

2 能力培养

2.1 语法训练——虚拟语气

英语中的语气分为陈述语气、疑问语气、祈使语气和虚拟语气四种。

陈述语气，用来陈述事实或提出想法

- In China, people take it as their responsibility to look after their parents.
  在中国，人们把赡养父母当作他们的责任。

疑问语气，用来提出问题

- Do you have a large or small family? 你的家庭人多还是人少?

祈使语气，用来提出请求，发出命令、警告或叮嘱等

- Make yourself free and easy. 轻松自在一点。

虚拟语气，用来表示假想的情况或主观意愿

- If I were you, I wouldn't send him to the boarding school. 如果我是你，我就不会送他去寄宿学校。

❶ 非真实条件句中的虚拟语气

与现在事实相反的虚拟语气

从句：If + 主语 + 动词的过去式（be动词用were）

主句：主语 + would / should / could / might + 动词原形

- If it **were** Saturday today, I **would visit** my grandparents. 如果今天是星期六，我就去看望我的祖父母。
  （事实：今天不是星期六。）

与过去事实相反的虚拟语气

从句：If + 主语 + had done

主句：主语 + would / should / could / might + have done

- If you **had worked** hard, you **would have** easily **passed** the mid-term examination.
  如果你当时努力学习的话，就能轻松通过期中考试了。
  （事实：当时没有努力学习。）

与将来事实相反的虚拟语气

从句：If + 主语 + were to do；If + 主语 + should do；If + 主语 + 动词的过去式

主句：主语 + would / should / could / might + 动词原形

- If I **were to see** / **should see** / **saw** my English teacher tomorrow, I **would invite** her home.
  如果明天见到我的英语老师，我会邀请她到我家来。
  （事实：明天见不到“我”的英语老师。）

省略if的虚拟语气

当非真实条件句中有should / had / were时，有时可以省略if，而把should / had / were置于主语之前，构成部分倒装。

- If she **should** be my daughter, I would encourage her to study and travel abroad to see the world.
  = **Should** she be my daughter, I would encourage her to study and travel abroad to see the world.
  如果她是我的女儿，我会鼓励她出国学习和旅游，看看世界。
  （事实：她不是“我”的女儿。）

❷ 用在从句中的虚拟语气

在宾语从句中

在wish / would rather后的宾语从句中，用过去完成时表示与过去相反的事实；用一般过去时表示与现在或将来相反的事实；用“could + 动词原形”等表示与将来相反的事实。

- I **wish** you **had come** to the lecture. 我希望你当时来听报告了。
  （对过去的虚拟。）
- **I'd rather** we **had** a rest now. 我希望我们现在能休息一下。
  （对现在的虚拟。）
- I **wish** I **could live** in the outer space some day. 我希望有一天我能住在外太空。
  （对将来的虚拟。）

在表语从句和状语从句中

在as if / as though引导的表语从句和方式状语从句中，表示与事实相反的情况时也用虚拟语气。用一般过去时表示与现在或将来相反的事实；用过去完成时表示与过去相反的事实。

- It seems **as though** it **were** spring here on campus. 校园里好像已经是春天了。
  （对现在的虚拟。）
- What happened in my childhood crowded upon my mind **as if** they **had** just **happened**.
  童年时发生的事情一下子涌入我的脑海，就好像它们刚刚发生过一样。
  （对过去的虚拟。）

❸ 使用情态动词使语气委婉

某些情态动词，特别是should，would，could，might，在口语中用得很多，使语气变得客气委婉。这类句子的谓语在形式上和虚拟条件句中的谓语形式很相近，不受时态的限制（现在的情况可以用过去的形式表示），且通常带有主观色彩，用于表达客气的请求或自己的愿望。因此，可以说它们是虚拟语气或接近虚拟语气。

- I should like to introduce our guest speaker. 我想介绍一下我们的嘉宾发言人。
- Would you mind explaining that again, please? 劳驾您再解释一遍，可以吗?
- Could you lend me your computer? 你可否把电脑借我用一下?
- I might have come to a wrong conclusion. 我也许得出了错误的结论。

练习1 请根据中文提示，用括号中动词的正确形式填空，完成句子。

1 我上课时没说那么多话就好了。

I wish I _____ (talk) so much during the class.

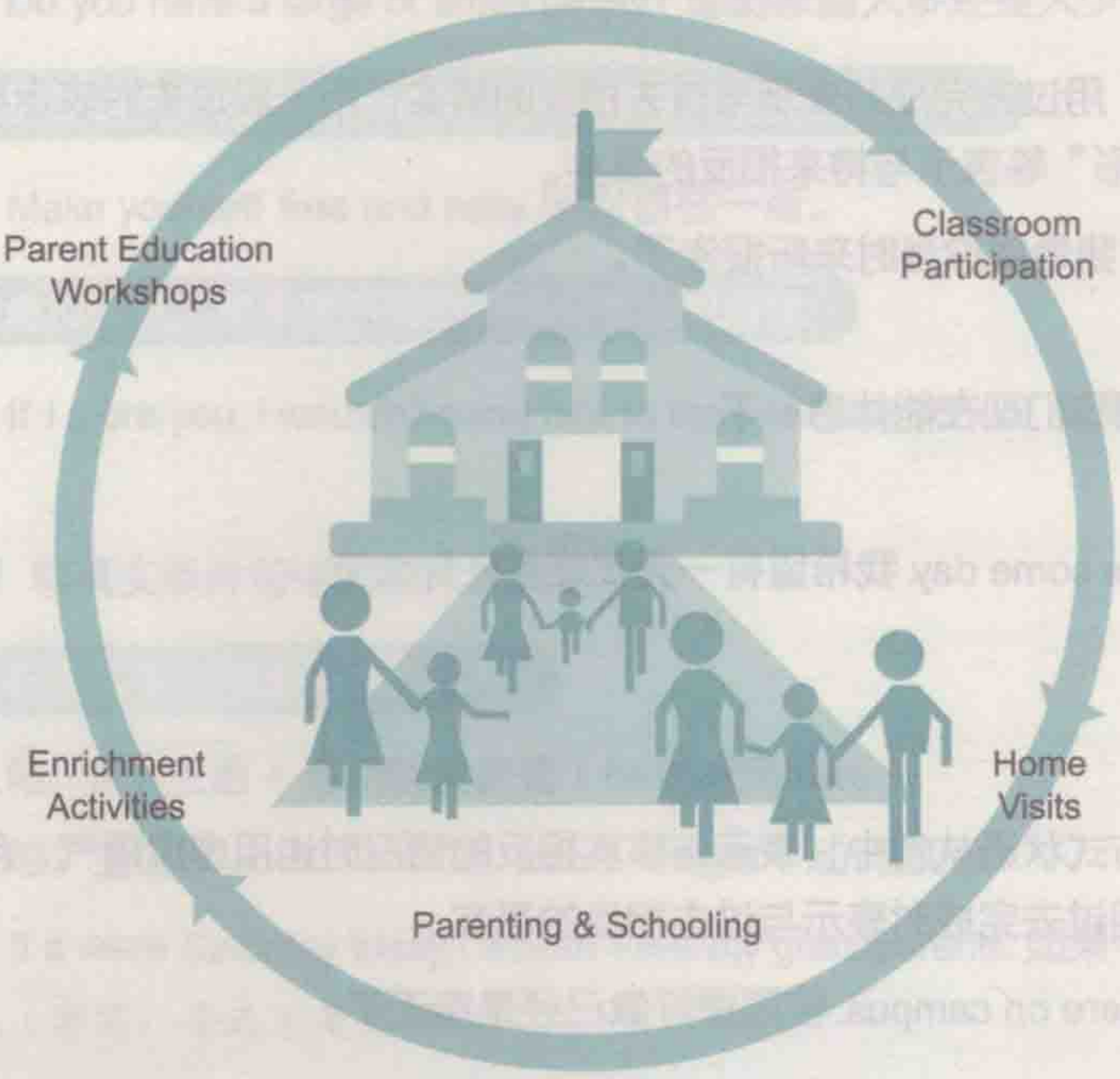
2 如果没有她妈妈的帮助，她现在不会是一名医生。

If it _____ (be) for her mother's help, she wouldn't be a doctor now.

3 这本书要是用中文写的话，读起来就没这么难了。

If the book _____ (be) written in Chinese, it _____ (be) so hard to read.

练习2 **请用已学词汇和语法描述下列图片所展示的话题。**



Example

Everyone is well aware of the significance of parenting and schooling in children's education. If one side is absent...

2.2 发音训练——单词的省音现象 2

请听录音，跟读模仿以下单词和例句，纠正自己的发音。

字母h在词首，或在前缀ex-后面时通常不发音

hour /ˈaʊə(r)/ ***n.*** **小时**

My university is far from my hometown. I need to spend 10 hours on the train.
我的大学离我的家乡很远，我需要坐10个小时的火车。

exhaust /ɪgˈzɔːst/ ***v.*** **耗尽**

She seemed to have exhausted all related topics of the conversation.
她似乎已经把所有相关的话题都谈完了。

exhibit /ɪgˈzɪbɪt/ ***v.*** **表现出，表露**

Students exhibited signs of fatigue and memory loss after burning the midnight oil.
熬夜之后，学生们显现出疲劳和记忆力衰退的迹象。

若前一词以/st/，/ʃt/，/ft/，/nd/，/pt/，/kt/，/tʃt/等音结尾，后一词以辅音开头，则前一词词尾的/t/通常不发音

next year /neks(t) jɪə(r)/ **明年**

My parents encourage and support me to go overseas for further education next year.
我的父母鼓励和支持我明年出国留学深造。

left hand /lef(t) hænd/ **左手**

Fewer people write with their left hand than with their right hand.
用左手写字的人比用右手的少。

kept quiet /kep(t) 'kwaɪət/ **保持安静**

Students kept quiet when their teacher was in the classroom. 老师在教室里时，学生们保持安静。

若前一词以/bd/，/gd/，/dʒd/，/nd/，/ld/，/zd/，/ðd/，/vd/等音结尾，后一词以辅音开头，则前一词词尾的/d/通常不发音

changed little /tʃeɪndʒ(d) 'lɪtl/ **变化很小**

The school has changed little since it was built 30 years ago.
自从30年前建成以来，这所学校几乎没有发生什么变化。

listened to /'lɪsn(d) tə/ **听**

We listened to the band playing in the hall. 我们在礼堂听了乐队演奏。

beloved family /bɪ'lʌv(d) 'fæməli/ **深爱的家人**

The bright sunshine, the house beside the beach, and my beloved family, are all my treasures.
明媚的阳光、海边的房子和我深爱的家人，都是我的宝物。

动词否定形式词尾-n't /nt/中的/t/常常不发音

You mustn't lose it. 你一定不能把它弄丢了。

Doesn't she know? 难道她不知道吗?

He wouldn't overeat. 他不会吃多的。

若前一词词尾的发音为/t/，后一词词首的发音为/t/或/d/，则前一词词尾的/t/有时不发音

I've got to go. 我得走了。

What do you want? 你想要什么?

What does she look like? 她长什么样?

3 话题讲解

3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——家人



关于家人的题目主要考查对亲人的描述。

都有哪些切入点呢?





可以分别谈论爸爸妈妈和爷爷奶奶的性格特征。

这样的话，就要结合我们在一起时所发生的一些事情去说了?





是的，也就是你们之间的关系和各种互动。



考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

- Who is the most important person to you in your family? [Why?]
- Can you tell me something about your family members?
- How much time do you manage to spend with your family and relatives?
- What sorts of things do you like to do with your family and relatives?

话题表达

lack of understanding 缺乏理解

privacy /'prɪvəsi/ *n.* 隐私

absence of parents 父母的缺席

enforce curfew 实施宵禁（必须回家的时间）

breadwinner /'bredwɪnə(r)/ *n.* 养家的人

unconditional support 无条件的支持

four generations living under one roof 四世同堂

role model 行为榜样，模范

My mother is a...person. 我妈妈是一个……的人。

My father is the most...person to me in my family since he... 我的父亲是整个家庭中对我来讲最……的人，因为他……

Whenever I have a problem, he is always... 每当我遇到问题，他总是……

I spend most of my time with... 我大部分时间和……一起度过。

I only get to see my parents on the weekend, because... 我只能在周末见到我的父母，因为……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

My mother is a very considerate and kind-hearted person. She works as a Chinese teacher in a middle school, so she has always been able to help me with my homework. My father, on the other hand, is a businessman. He set up his own company a long time ago. It sells clothes to cities around the world. He's a hard-working and responsible man and often busy on business. But we take every chance to meet and watch basketball games together because we are both big NBA fans. I don't need to worry about generation gap issues with my parents. I'm very grateful to have them.

3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——人物

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

Describe a teacher you want to meet again.

You should say:

when you met him / her

what subject he / she taught

what was special about him / her

and explain why you want to meet him / her again.

思路解析与拓展

这道题需要你描述一位自己想要再次见到的老师。

我遇到过很多老师，他们教授不同的科目，也有着各种各样的性格特点。让我想想……

可以从你们第一次见面开始描述，包括时间、地点等基本信息，然后过渡到这位老师教授的科目，他/她的授课方式或性格特点等。最后描述你想要再次见到这位老师的原因，可以说说他/她曾经对你的指导为你日后的发展带来了哪些帮助，或者他/她对你的人生产生了哪些影响等。



话题表达

friendly and helpful 友好且乐于助人的

kind and patient 友善且有耐心的

humble and modest 谦虚且低调的

have a good sense of humour 有幽默感

open-minded and creative 思想开明且有创造力的

always wear a smile on the face 总是面带微笑

average/athletic build 中等/健美的身材

stunning appearance 惊艳的外表

I profoundly respect...(sb) because... 我非常尊敬……（某人），因为……

...(sb) is my dearest friend and has a/an...influence on me. ……（某人）是我最亲密的朋友，并对我产生了……的影响。

I admire...(sb) and want to be similar to him/her because... 我钦佩……（某人），想成为和他/她一样的人，因为……

When we are together, we sometimes... 当我们在一起的时候，我们有时……

I hope to meet...(sb) again not only because..., but also... 我希望能再次见到……（某人），不仅因为……，而且……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

My history teacher Mr Liu impressed me deeply. Most of the history classes were taught in a traditional way, which simply made us memorise dates and names. But all of these came to an end when my teacher Mr Liu stepped into our classroom. I was absolutely shocked by his stunning appearance at first. He was a tall, middle-aged scholar wearing glasses. However, Mr Liu was not in the way of a traditional history teacher, but more of a fashion model or movie star. He always kept a good shape, his shoulders broad, his suit perfectly fit, and shoes carefully polished.

Apart from his good look, I was also surprised by the way he taught. Despite so many years that have passed, I still remember clearly the first question he asked then — 'What is history?' After my classmates gave answers voluntarily, he summarised in a very encouraging intonation, saying that 'History is not only yesterday, but also today and tomorrow. It is the science that studies the progress of human development.' Seriously, that's the first time and the only time I've heard of that idea which offered a developing view of humanity.

I hope to meet Mr Liu again not only because he is an important teacher for me, but also because I really hope to tell him how many achievements I've made by using the knowledge he taught me.

4 课后练习

4.1 请从方框中选择正确的选项填入空白处，完成对话并朗读对话。

A skipped classes	B hit the books	C hang out
D fell behind	E cram for	F pull a few all-nighters to study



Hey, what are you rushing for?



Oh, I'm just on my way to the library to 1 _____. I've got a maths exam next week.



Maths. That's not easy.



Yeah, and the problem is that I 2 _____ at the beginning of the semester. I really 3 _____ because my friends kept asking me to 4 _____ with them.



Ouch! It sounds like you are going to have to 5 _____. That's not a good idea, because it's just too hard to focus without enough sleep.



Yeah. Well, I guess I'll learn the hard way. OK, I'd better get to the library to 6 _____ that test now!



Good luck!

4.2 请回答以下问题。

- Do you think it's better for students to live at home with their families, or away from home?
- What do you think is the most important factor in students' success?
- Describe a good parent you know.
  You should say:
  who the parent is
  how you got to know the parent
  what the parent looks like
  and explain why you think the parent is good.
- Describe a person who has greatly influenced you.
  You should say:
  who the person is / was
  how you came into contact with this person
  how he / she has influenced you and why
  and explain what you generally think of this person.

Writing

1 词汇基础

1.1 请根据中文提示，将下列单词补充完整。

1 支持　s_ _ _ _ _t

2 伦理，道德规范　e_ _ _ _

3 过度　ex_ _ _ _

4 首要的；初等的　pr_ _ _ _ _

5 拥抱　em_ _ _ _ _

6 指导　gu_ _ _ _ _ _

7 学术的　ac_ _ _ _ _ _

8 关系　re_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _p

1.2 请使用1.1中的单词填空，完成短语。

1 emotional _____ from parents

2 provide students with _____

3 build strong _____ with

4 go to _____ school

5 improve students' _____ performance

6 _____ the new school with enthusiasm

2 能力培养

2.1 词汇表达

❶ 核心单词及其派生词

competence /'kɒmpɪtəns/ *n.* 能力
competent /'kɒmpɪtənt/ *adj.* 有能力的
graduate /'grædʒuət/ *n.* 毕业生
/'grædʒueɪt/ *v.* 毕业
graduation /ˌgrædʒu'eɪʃn/ *n.* 毕业
harmony /'hɑ:məni/ *n.* 协调；和睦
harmonious /hɑ:'məʊniəs/ *adj.* 和谐的
comfort /'kʌmfət/ *n.* 舒适 *v.* 安慰
comfortable /'kʌmftəbl/ *adj.* 舒适的
supervise /'su:pəvaɪz/ *v.* 监督，管理
supervision /ˌsu:pə'vɪʒn/ *n.* 监督，管理

improve /ɪm'pru:v/ *v.* 提高
improvement /ɪm'pru:vmənt/ *n.* 提高
obsess /əb'ses/ *v.* 使着迷
obsession /əb'seʃn/ *n.* 迷恋
nourish /'nʌrɪʃ/ *v.* 培养；滋养
nourishment /'nʌrɪʃmənt/ *n.* 营养
literacy /'lɪtərəsi/ *n.* 读写能力
literate /'lɪtərət/ *adj.* 有读写能力的
compete /kəm'pi:t/ *v.* 竞争
competition /ˌkɒmpə'tɪʃn/ *n.* 竞争

❷ 常用短语

home schooling 在家上学

family education 家庭教育

private / public school 私立 / 公立学校

fall back on / upon 依靠，求助于

language competence 语言能力

have a good command of 熟练掌握……

distance education 远程教育

mental growth 智力发展

be obsessed with 沉迷于……

academic performance 学习表现；学习成绩

learn things by rote 死记硬背

mutual trust 互相信任

mental nourishment 精神食粮

graduation ceremony 毕业典礼

exchange of feelings 感情交流

the emotional bond between parents and children 父母和孩子之间的情感纽带

❸ 写作例句

Some people think / feel / claim / believe / argue that... 有些人认为……

- **Some people claim that** with the increasing pace of digitization, libraries are now obsolete.
  有些人认为随着数字化步伐的加快，图书馆已经过时了。
  同类表达：
  Other people hold the opinion that... 其他人认为……
  Yet other people put forward the view that... 但是其他人认为……

There is no doubt that... 毫无疑问……

- **There is no doubt that** the government has the obligation to ensure every student can receive an equal education. 毫无疑问，政府有义务确保每个学生都能接受到平等的教育。
  同类表达：
  It is important that... 重要的是……
  One cannot deny that... 不可否认的是……
  It is impossible to argue against the fact that... 不可辩驳的事实是……

A good example is... 一个很好的例子就是……

- **A good example is** China, who invests heavily in its public education and has achieved good results.
  一个很好的例子就是中国，它在公共教育上投入很大，并取得了很好的成果。
  同类表达：
  Another example is... 另一个例子是……
  Take...for example, ... 拿……举例来说，……
  ...provide(s) a perfect example of... ……提供了一个……的完美例子。

...triggered widespread discussion ……引起了广泛的讨论

- This topic **triggered widespread discussion** among parents and teachers.
  这个话题在家长和老师中引发了广泛的讨论。

练习 **请从方框中选择正确的短语并以其正确形式填空，完成句子。**

distance education	home schooling	student competence
academic performance	obsessed with	parental supervision

1 One of the primary advantages of _____ is that you can study wherever you have access to Internet connection.

2 _____ is favoured by those who do not have faith in mainstream education.

3 Children nowadays tend to do less exercise than in the past, because some of them are _____ _____ computer games.

4 Reading ability enables children to explore new areas without _____.

5 Many teachers do not believe that school attendance is the best measure of _____.

6 This school promised to focus on students' emotional needs and cultural awareness to raise _____ _____.

2.2 语法重点

要完成写作任务，就需要在掌握各种句子成分的基础上，写出完整的句子。英语中的句子基本上衍生于五种基本句型：主谓句型、主系表句型、主谓宾句型、主谓双宾句型和主谓宾补句型。

❶ 主谓句型

句型结构为：主语 + 谓语（不及物动词）（+ 状语）

“主语 + 谓语（不及物动词）”是句子的主体部分，不及物动词所表示的动作没有作用的对象，其本身的意思是完整的，所以后面不需要加宾语。

Time	flies.
名词	不及物动词
主语	谓语

译文：时光荏苒，岁月如梭。

这种句型后面通常可以接介词短语或副词等作状语，用于修饰这个不及物动词所表示的动作的程度、时间、地点等。

Class	begins	at 8 o'clock.
名词	不及物动词	介词短语
主语	谓语	时间状语

译文：8点开始上课。

Students	study	in schools.
名词	不及物动词	介词短语
主语	谓语	地点状语

译文：学生们在学校学习。

Children	are playing	happily.
名词	不及物动词	副词
主语	谓语	状语

译文：孩子们正在高兴地玩耍。

Tips

大多数动词既可以作及物动词也可以作不及物动词，如：increase，decrease，drop，change，go，work，sleep，walk，swim等。但有些动词只能作不及物动词，如：fall，arrive，come，laugh，happen，stay等。

❷ 主系表句型

句型结构为：主语 + 系动词 + 表语（+ 状语）

系动词的主要作用是连接主语和后面的表语，而表语通常用于说明主语的状态或特点，比较常见的表语成分为形容词和名词（短语），介词短语有时也可以作表语。

Being patient and kind	makes	a good teacher.
动名词短语	系动词	名词短语
主语	系动词	表语

译文：耐心和善良造就一位好老师。

My mother	is	at home.
名词短语	系动词	介词短语
主语	系动词	表语

译文：我的母亲在家。

Tips

英语中除了最常见的系动词be以外，还有两类常见的系动词：

- 表示主语的特征或状态的系动词，如：look，remain，keep，seem，appear，feel，stay，smell，sound，taste等。
- 表示主语的转变或结果的系动词，如：become，get，grow，turn，prove，come，go，fall等。

有时表语后面还可以接状语。

This dress	looks	fit	on you.
名词短语	系动词	形容词	介词短语
主语	系动词	表语	状语

译文：这条裙子看起来很适合你。

注意区分以下这两个句型结构：

- He works hard. 他努力工作。

（句中的work是不及物动词，表示一个具体的动作，副词hard修饰不及物动词work，hard作状语。）

- He looks happy. 他看起来很高兴。

（句中的look是系动词，不表示具体动作，形容词happy描述的是主语he的状态，happy作表语。）

练习 以下六个句子中的谓语被打乱了顺序，请为每个句子选择适合的谓语，然后将完整的句子写在横线上。

	主语	谓语	表语 / 状语 / 表语 + 状语
1	The competition	is	early
2	The teachers at this school	fluctuated	unchanged in recent 5 years.
3	School	starts	the first social organisation a child attends.
4	The person living alone	have become	lonely.
5	Small families	remain	a commonplace in modern society.
6	The number of high-school graduates enrolling in university	does not necessarily feel	slightly in the US in recent years.

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

2.3 衔接方式

❶ as far as...goes / as far as...is concerned

常用于引出讨论的特定话题，相当于with regard to...，意为“就……而言”。写作中还常会用到as far as I am concerned，相当于in my opinion，意为“我认为”。

- **As far as** the development of home schooling **goes** in many countries, people have mixed reviews.
  就家庭教育在许多国家的发展而言，人们对它的评价褒贬不一。
- **As far as** the benefits of education **are concerned** (= **With regard to** the benefits of education), it nurtures important talents for the development of a nation.
  就教育的好处而言，它为一个国家的发展培养了重要的人才。
- The priority for a country, **as far as I am concerned** (= **in my opinion**), should always be education.
  我认为，一个国家的重心永远都应该是教育。

❷ until

表示时间，意为“直到”。作介词时，其后接某个时间点；作连词时，其后接时间状语从句。

- He plans to keep writing diaries **until** the end of this year.他计划到今年年底之前一直写日记。（until为介词。）
- The boy looked after his little sister **until** their parents were back from work.
  这个男孩一直照顾他的小妹妹，直到他们的父母下班回来。（until为连词。）

❸ lest

相当于in case，意为“以免”，引导条件状语从句，常放在主句之后，前面不需要用逗号隔开。

- Parents are cautious about choosing extracurricular activities for their children **lest** they take up too much time for their study.
  家长为孩子选择课外活动时很谨慎，以免它们占用过多的学习时间。

❹ whether

表示选择或不确定，意为“是否；不管”。whether可以引导名词性从句，如主语从句、表语从句或宾语从句，也可以引导让步状语从句。whether引导宾语从句时，可以与if互换。

- A decisive factor for a good education is **whether** it can make a child an upright man.
  良好教育的一个决定性因素是它能否使孩子成为一个正直的人。（whether引导表语从句。）
- Parents have the responsibility to check **whether** the books are suitable for children.
  家长们有责任确定那些书是否适合孩子看。（whether引导宾语从句，可以用if替换。）
- **Whether** he will study abroad has not yet been decided.
  还没有决定他是否出国留学。（whether引导主语从句。）
- **Whether** their children like it or not, the parents have to move to another city because of work.
  不管他们的孩子喜不喜欢，这对父母都不得不因为工作而搬去其他城市。（whether引导让步状语从句。）

❺ hence

表示因果关系，意为“所以”，用法相当于thus。hence也可以用在表示时间的短语之后，意为“在……（时间）以后”。

- Working parents are so busy at work and household chores. **Hence**, they may have little time for their children. 有工作的父母忙于工作和家庭琐事。因此，他们可能没有多少时间陪伴他们的孩子。
- Teachers still play an important part in this era with high technology, and they will still be that even hundreds of years **hence**. 在这个高科技时代，教师仍然扮演着重要的角色。即使在数百年后，他们仍然重要。

❻ on condition that

表示条件关系，可引导条件状语从句，意为“如果”。

- Some young adults prefer to live alone **on condition that** they can afford the rent.
  如果能付得起房租，一些年轻人更喜欢一个人住。

练习 请使用本单元学过的衔接词或短语并以其正确形式填空，完成句子。

1 In many countries, _____ new parents take parenting courses or not should be an open choice.

2 _____ I am concerned, children should be encouraged to learn a second language at an early age.

3 The bad habits of children should be broken as soon as possible _____ they grow into big problems.

4 This issue has failed to attract widespread attention _____ recently.

5 Teaching at home is often seen as women's work and _____ mothers have less leisure activities.

6 This problem can be solved _____ teachers and parents devote joint efforts to it.

7 This child has been provided for by his parents _____ he reaches eighteen.

3 题型讲解

3.1 教育类话题

雅思写作大作文的主体段通常包含以下几个部分：

idea	观点
explanation	解释观点
further explanation / example	进一步解释 / 举例
detail / result of the example	细节 / 举例的结果
additional information	补充信息
transition	转折
comparison	对比
conclusion	结论

Tips

在雅思写作大作文的主体段中，“观点”“解释观点”“结论”是必有项。同时，主体段也可能包括“进一步解释 / 举例”“细节 / 举例的结果”“补充信息”“转折”“对比”等内容，但不是必有项，且出现顺序可以根据实际情况灵活调整。

请以下面的题目为例，学习大作文主体段的写作。

Once children start school, teachers have more influence on their intellectual and social development than parents do. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

❶ 题型分析

该题目为“同意或不同意”题型，中心话题为：孩子上学后，老师对其影响是否超过父母。

同意：强调老师对孩子的影响大

不同意：强调父母对孩子的影响大

❷ 段落组织

主体段1 同意（认为老师的影响更大）

idea	Once children start school, they spend most of their time with teachers rather than parents.
explanation	Whatever they learn, they are guided through this process by their teachers.
example	For example, children are taught common knowledge of different subjects from laws of nature and universe, theories and formulas of maths and physics, to events and people in history.
result of the example	It is teachers who broaden children’s views and encourage them to know the world actively.
conclusion	There is no doubt that teachers have a very strong influence on them.



观点	一旦孩子们开始上学，他们的大部分时间都是和老师在一起，而非父母。
解释观点	无论他们学习什么，都是在老师的指导下完成的。
举例	例如，孩子们被教授不同学科的常识，从自然和宇宙的规律，数学和物理的理论和公式，到历史事件和人物。
举例的结果	是老师开拓了孩子们的视野，鼓励他们去积极地认识这个世界。
结论	毫无疑问，老师对他们有着非常大的影响。

主体段2 不同意（认为父母的影响更大）

idea	However, in regard to a child's moral and emotional development, parents are clearly of far greater importance than teachers.
explanation	Unless the child attends a boarding school, they will spend more time with their parents than anyone else.
example	For instance, parents provide emotional supports, moral guidance and practical assistance in homework among other things.
additional information	Furthermore, studies show that children from a happy family tend to perform better at school and go on to have more successful lives.
conclusion	Obviously, this proves the important role parents play in a child's growth.

观点	然而，对于孩子的道德和情感发展，父母显然比老师重要得多。
解释观点	除非孩子上寄宿学校，否则他们和父母在一起的时间会比和其他任何人在一起的时间都更多。
举例	例如，父母（给孩子）提供情感支持、道德指导和家庭作业等方面的实际帮助。
补充信息	此外，研究表明，来自幸福家庭的孩子往往在学校表现得更好，进而拥有更加成功的人生。
结论	显然，这证明了父母在孩子成长过程中所起的重要作用。

练习 **请根据题目，判断所给范文的两个主体段中句子的作用。**

Families have a great influence on children's development, but the outside world plays a bigger part in children's life. Do you agree or disagree?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

主体段1 不同意（认为家庭的影响更大）

Admittedly, family's influence on children is very profound.	1 _____
As the first teachers in children's life, parents set role models for them and would shape their personalities and thoughts.	2 _____
For example, by observing parents' daily activities, a child can learn their behaviour and acquire many abilities.	3 _____
Besides, the early teaching from parents can also help improve the intellectual development of a child.	4 _____
Therefore, parents play a key role in children's development.	5 _____

主体段2 同意（认为外界的影响更大）

However, the outside-of-home elements do make great contributions to the overall growth of children.	6 _____
In terms of academic education, teachers in school have priority over parents.	7 _____
Compared with some parents, teachers have more professional knowledge in inspiring students and providing instructions.	8 _____
Moreover, the school is a good place to develop children's social skills by allowing them to play and communicate with their peers.	9 _____
Clearly, the influence of external factors is equally important.	10 _____

3.2 曲线图 2

曲线图的主体段写作需要注意以下几点：

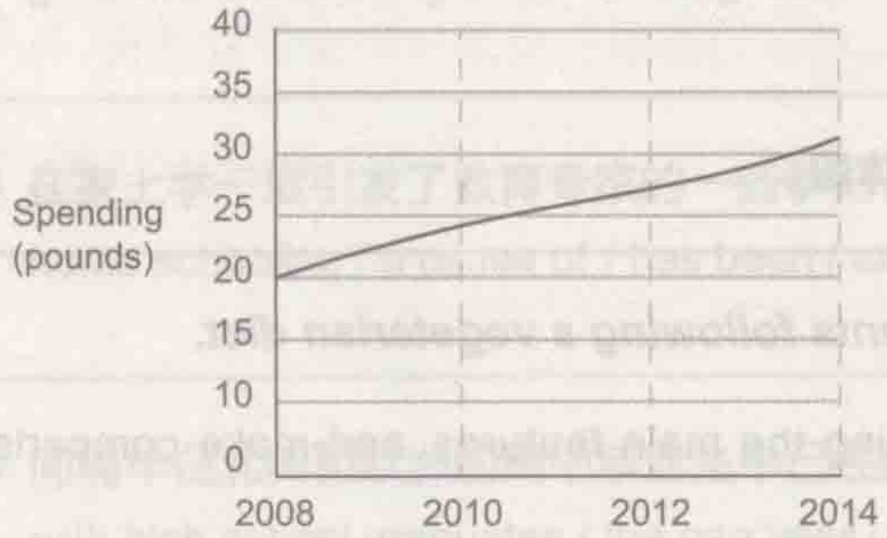
- 词汇：准确使用表示变化的词
- 句子：尽量使用不同的句型
- 段落：组织合理，依次描述横轴、纵轴、时间、项目等
- 内容：数据选取有依据，如最高点、最低点、交叉点、总体趋势等
- 语法：语法正确

请以下面的题目为例，学习曲线图主体段的写作。

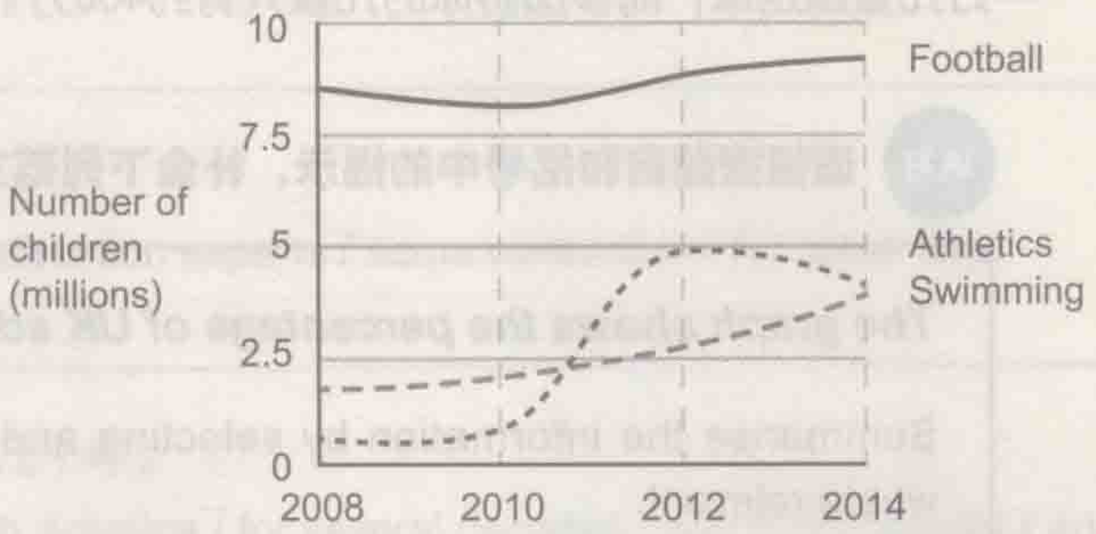
The first chart below gives information about the money spent by British parents on their children's sports between 2008 and 2014. The second chart shows the number of children who participated in three sports in Britain over the same time period.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Average monthly spending on children's sports



Participation in three different sports



开头段

The first line graph shows British parents' average monthly expenses on their children's sports and the second line graph displays the number of children engaging in three different sports during the period from 2008 to 2014. Overall, it is clear that the amount of money that British parents spent on their children's sports increased each year. Football was by far the most popular sport that children took an interest in.

第一个曲线图显示了从2008年到2014年英国父母每个月在孩子运动上的平均花费，第二个曲线图显示了同一时间段参与三种不同运动的孩子的数量。总的来说，很明显，英国父母在孩子运动上的花费每年都在增加。到目前为止，足球是孩子们最感兴趣的运动。

主体段1 第一个曲线图 + 第二个曲线图（athletics）

British parents had to *spend 20 pounds per month* **in 2008**. **Over the shown period** of the first line graph, that figure continued rising stably **and finally** reached *around 31 pounds* **by the year of 2014. Between 2008 and 2010**, the number of children who took part in athletics did not change much, *sitting at around 0.5 million constantly*. **The following two years** saw a sharp increase, *reaching 5 million*. Then it experienced a slight decline to *about 4.5 million* **in 2014**.	**连接词** **时间** 变化 *具体数据*

在2008年，英国父母每个月花费20英镑。在第一个曲线图所示期间，这一数字持续稳步上升，最终在2014年达到31英镑左右。从2008年到2010年，参加田径运动的孩子数量没有太大变化，一直保持在50万左右。在接下来的两年里，这一数量急剧增加，达到了500万。然后在2014年略微下降至450万左右。

主体段2 第二个曲线图（swimming，football）

On the other hand, **in 2008**, the number of kids engaging in football was almost five times higher than that of going swimming, *at around 8.5 million and 1.7 million, respectively*. **Six years later**, there were more than *9 million* children playing football, **compared with** *only about 4 million* swimming participants.	**连接词** **时间** 变化 *具体数据*

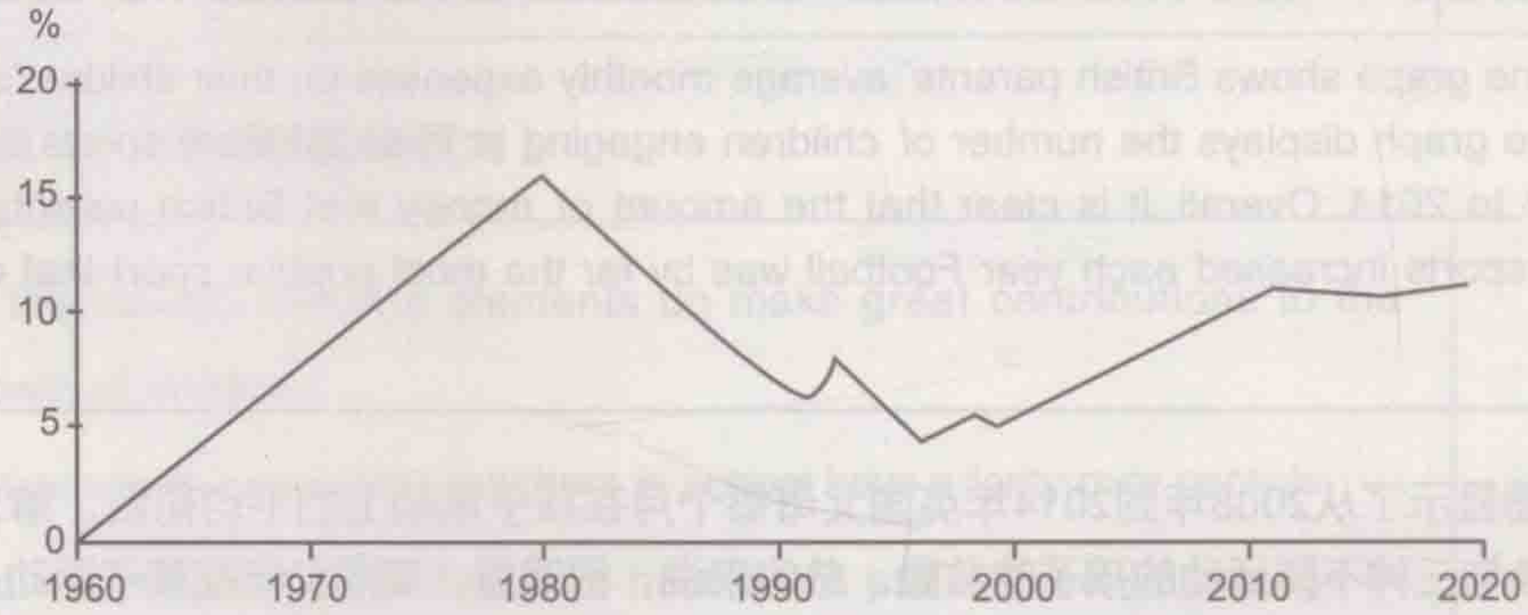
另一方面，2008年，踢足球的孩子的数量几乎是游泳的5倍，分别约为850万和170万。6年后，有超过900万儿童踢足球，而参加游泳的儿童只有约400万。

练习 **请根据题目和括号中的提示，补全下列范文的主体段。**

The graph shows the percentage of UK adolescents following a vegetarian diet.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

UK adolescents following a vegetarian diet



开头段

A glance at the graph reveals the change in the proportion of UK adolescents adopting a vegetarian diet in the period from 1960 to 2020. It is apparent that there has been a significant variation in the ratio of UK vegetarians at young ages.

主体段1 时间段1960~2000

Having started at the lowest point 1 _____ 1960, the percentage of young vegetarians in the UK grew 2 _____ (sharp) over the next twenty years. After reaching the 3 _____ at about 16 per cent in 1980, the rate 4 _____ (see) a sharp decrease with a slight 5 _____ (fluctuate) in the following two decades.

主体段2 时间段2000~2020

It was in 2000 that the proportion of UK teenagers practising vegetarianism stood 6 _____ about 5 per cent. Since then, there was a 7 _____ rise in the ratio of young people who had vegetarian meals 8 _____ 2010 when it was about 10 per cent. It is 9 _____ (predict) that the percentage may remain 10 _____ (change) in the last decade.

4 课后练习

4.1 请根据中文提示，将所给英文表达重新排序，组成一个语义完整的句子。

1 社会技能的教学与孩子们在数学和读写能力方面的发展同样至关重要。

the teaching of / to a child's development / social skills / in mathematics / is just as vital / and literacy

_____

2 教授孩子们良好的行为应该从小开始。

good behaviour / ought to / teaching children / start at the elementary level

_____

3 在家上学一度引发了教育专家的一些争论。

home schooling / a cause of / has been / among education experts / some contention / for some time

_____

4 间隔年在北美和欧洲的高中毕业生中已经盛行了几十年。

with high school graduates / the gap year / in North America / for several decades / has been popular / and Europe

_____

5 有些针对年轻人的教育类电视节目确实为他们提供了精神食粮。

there are / with mental nourishment / educational TV programmes / that do provide them / aimed at young people

_____

6 教育是培养国家劳动力的能力和本领的最佳途径。

education is / develop the competence / the best way to / the national workforce / and capability of

_____

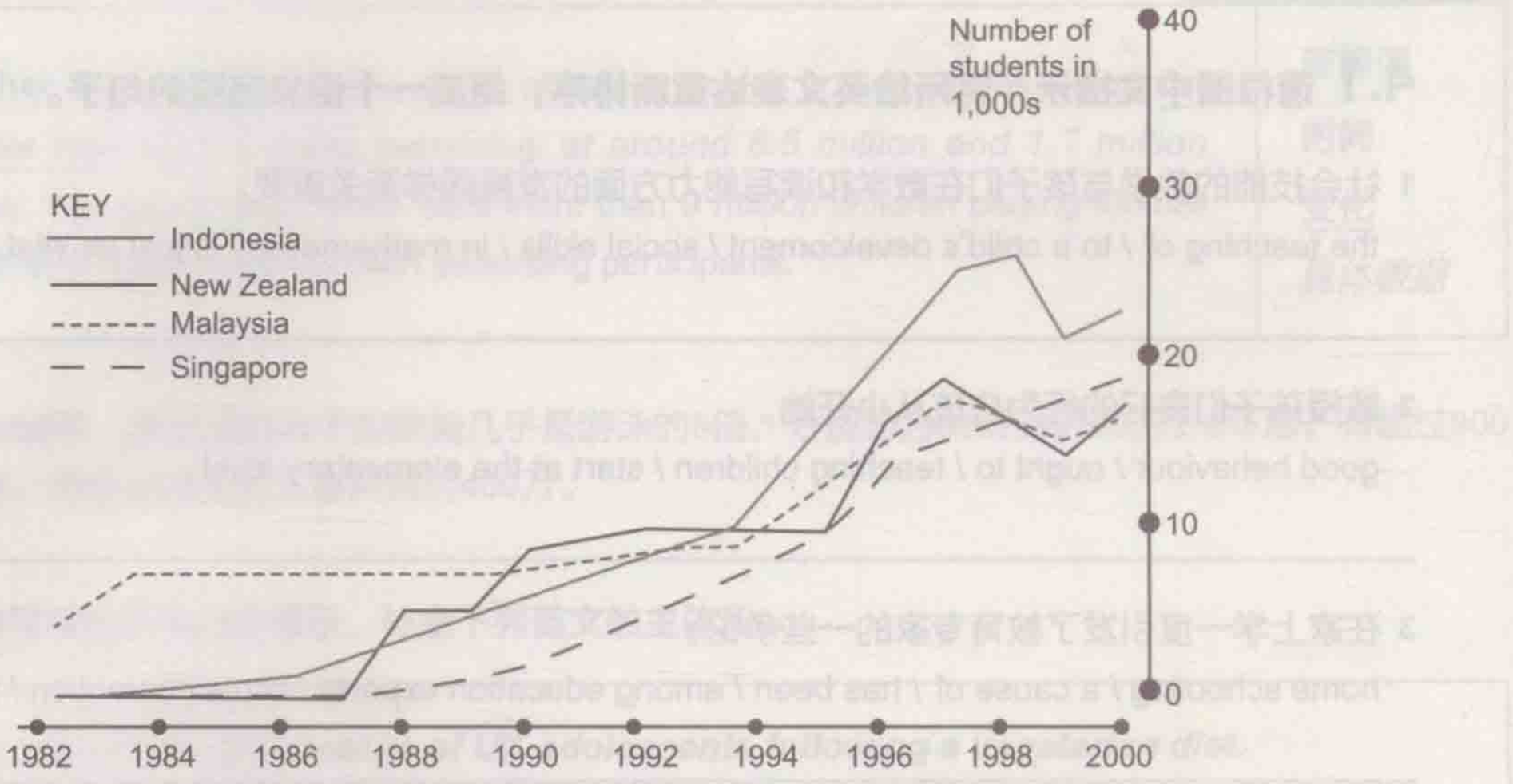
4.2 请根据题目，从方框中选择正确的表述补全下列范文的主体段。

fluctuations	a gradual increase	reached	peaking
slightly higher	a moderate increase	a sharp rise	stable trend
fluctuated slightly	a sudden decrease		

The graph below shows four countries of residence of overseas students in Country A.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Number of visitor arrival for education from four countries



主体段1 项目（New Zealand, Singapore）

There were no foreign students in Country A coming from New Zealand and Singapore in the first five-year stage. Throughout the rest of the period, the figure of New Zealand experienced some significant 1 _____, while there was 2 _____ in the number of Singapore. In 2000, both Singapore and New Zealand 3 _____ just below 20,000 students, but the number of Singapore was 4 _____.

主体段2 项目（Indonesia, Malaysia）

Indonesia shared the starting point with the above countries, while the number of Malaysian students travelling to Country A for education in 1982 was nearly 5,000. The figure of Indonesia witnessed 5 _____ from 1994 to 1998. After 6 _____ at more than 25,000, the number of students underwent 7 _____, followed by 8 _____. There was a 9 _____ in the statistics of Malaysia during the period from 1984 to 1994. It 10 _____ in the last two years of the period and had the lowest point among the four countries in 2000 despite having the highest beginning point in 1982.

Unit 3 Keeping Fit

Listening

1 词汇基础

1.1 请将以下生活和饮食习惯进行分类。

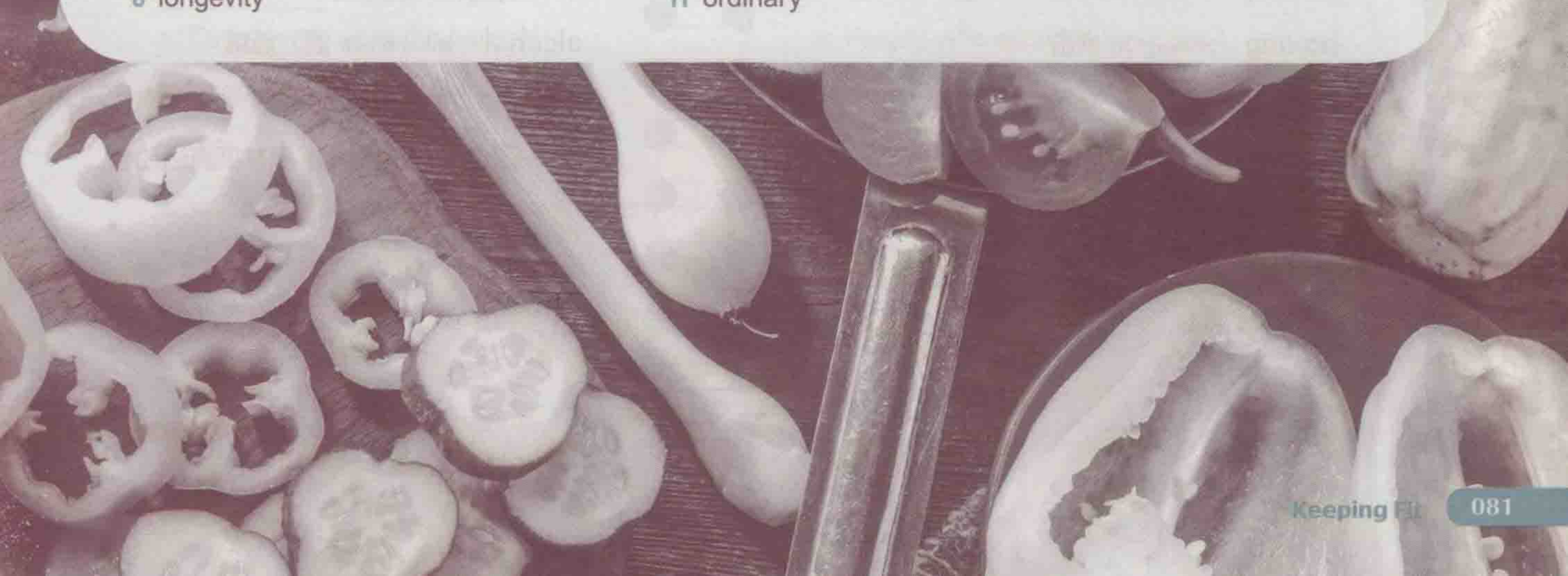
A drink bubble milk tea
B exercise regularly
C drink vegetable juice
D stay up
E eat deep-fried chicken pieces
F go jogging
G drink mineral water
H drink too much alcohol

Healthy	Unhealthy

1.2 请将下列单词或短语与其对应的同义表达相匹配。

1 disabled
2 sanitary
3 average
4 optimistic
5 stay up
6 triumph
7 therapy
8 longevity

A treatment
B go to bed later than usual
C long life
D handicapped
E victory
F hygienic
G positive
H ordinary



1.3 请听录音，选出与录音中出现的单词或短语意思相近的选项。

1 scaled

A measured　　B climbed　　C overcame

2 make it

A arrive　　B get　　C reach

3 daunting

A relevant　　B important　　C frightening

4 involved

A participated　　B complicated　　C affected

5 summit

A meeting　　B top　　C mountain

场景词汇

performance /pə'fɔ:məns/ *n.* 表演；表现
impress /ɪm'pres/ *v.* 使留下深刻印象
therapy /'θerəpi/ *n.* 治疗；疗法
physical /'fɪzɪkl/ *adj.* 身体的；物理的
psychological /ˌsaɪkə'lɒdʒɪkl/ *adj.* 心理的
beneficial /ˌbenɪ'fɪʃl/ *adj.* 有益的
flexible /'fleksəbl/ *adj.* 灵活的
suitable /'su:təbl/ *adj.* 合适的
jog /dʒɒg/ *n.* / *v.* 慢跑
yoga /'jəʊgə/ *n.* 瑜伽
skiing /'ski:ɪŋ/ *n.* 滑雪运动
hockey /'hɒki/ *n.* 曲棍球
boxing /'bɒksɪŋ/ *n.* 拳击
gymnastics /dʒɪm'næstɪks/ *n.* 体操
ping-pong /'pɪŋ pɒŋ/ *n.* 乒乓球
athlete /'æθli:t/ *n.* 运动员
professional /prə'feʃənl/ *n.* 职业选手
amateur /'æmətə(r)/ *n.* 业余爱好者
audience /'ɔ:diəns/ *n.* 观众
champion /'tʃæmpiən/ *n.* 冠军
track /træk/ *n.* 跑道
stadium /'steɪdiəm/ *n.* 体育馆
scale /skeɪl/ *v.* 攀爬 *n.* 规模；比例
strategy /'strætədʒi/ *n.* 策略
technique /tek'ni:k/ *n.* 技巧；技术
muscle /'mʌsl/ *n.* 肌肉
mineral /'mɪnərəl/ *n.* 矿物质；矿产
alcohol /'ælkəhɒl/ *n.* 酒；酒精
instead of 代替
the Olympic Games 奥林匹克运动会

2 能力培养

2.1 了解单项选择题

雅思听力考试Part 2和Part 3中通常有单项选择题。这种题型形式多变，干扰项较难排除，因此难度较高。单项选择题要求考生从三个备选答案中选出一个正确答案，有两种出题形式：

- 题目是一个完整的疑问句，需要在选项中选出正确答案；
- 题目是句子的一部分，需要在选项中选出正确答案完成句子。

2.2 解题步骤

1. 先读题干，再读选项。
2. 画出题目中的关键信息（定位词）。首先需要找出句子的主要成分，确定题目对应的“主体”——“谁做了什么事”或“什么东西怎么样”。
3. 标记出题目中的修饰限定成分，主要包括否定词、序数词、形容词比较级和最高级、限定词等，因为这些词出现的地方通常为考点。
4. 听录音，根据题目处理信息。对于已经听懂的信息，选项较短时直接选择答案，选项较长时先做速记，写下关键信息，然后迅速定位下一道题目，防止漏听。对于没听懂的信息，不要边听边选，要先做笔记，然后迅速定位下一道题目，防止漏听，在录音结束后再通过信号词和笔记内容推断答案。
5. 检查答案，没听到答案的题目也不要留空，可根据已有信息大胆推测。

2.3 巩固练习

练习1 请快速读题，圈出题目中的关键词。

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

1 How long did the Longevity Project carry on?

A from the early 1920s to the end of the century　　B from the birth of the subjects to their adulthood

C from 1920s to the end of the researcher's life

2 The speaker did the researches about longevity mainly by

A inviting some researchers on this field.　　B collecting people's queries.

C looking up books.

3 _____ live the longest.

A People who work the hardest　　B People who exercise the most

C People who eat the best

4 What is one secret of living longer?

A visiting an experienced doctor regularly　　B focusing on serious problems

C having a positive mindset

练习2 请听四段录音，并按照要求完成练习1中的题目。

练习3 请再听一遍练习2的录音，写下出现在每道题答案附近的表逻辑关系的信号词。

1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____

3 题型讲解

3.1 高频场景

保持身体健康的两个有效方法是健康饮食和规律运动，因此，雅思听力考试中的健康类场景主要与这两个方面有关。相关题目多出现在前3个Part中，考查的题型主要是填空题和选择题。考生需要掌握关于饮食和运动的词汇，总体难度不大。该场景下的高频考点包括：

- 加入健身房
- 户外运动
- 校园活动
- 饮食习惯
- 健康咨询
- 兴趣爱好

3.2 题型演练

练习1 请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

1 What does a triathlon include?

A swimming, running and jumping B lifting, cycling and running C running, swimming and cycling

2 How many breaks are there in a triathlon?

A one B two C none

3 Why does the speaker prefer running shorter distance?

A because it's easier

B because he has competitive advantages

C because it won't influence his performance in other sports items

4 How many kilometres are required for the cycling?

A 750 B 20 C 5

5 How long does the speaker need to spend when preparing for a triathlon?

A half a year B a year C five months

练习2 请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

1 Why do the students visit Dave?

A They want to know how to write an essay about physiotherapy.

B They want Dave to treat their injuries.

C They need help for the presentation.

2 Normally, how to treat a patient in physiotherapy?

A by applying massage to the affected area

B by finding the most suitable treatment for different people

C by using all kinds of treatments in physiotherapy

3 What's the advantage of 'stability training'?

A It is physically beneficial.

B It's useful in the training of tennis players.

C It is aimed at treating tennis players' injuries.

4 The electrotherapy is seldom used in the treatment because

A it is harmful to human body.

B it can be dangerous when the facility cannot work well.

C it is of limited use.

5 How does Dave help some players improve their performance?

A by making videos and analysing their movements

B by making videos of their postures and enhancing their strength

C by providing useful advice on their physical conditions

4 课后练习

4.1 请快速读题，圈出题目中的关键词。

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

1 It's healthier to do

A intense exercise. B intense exercise regularly. C moderate exercise regularly.

2 The main effect of exercise on the body is

A becoming stronger. B being more energetic. C gaining good quality of rest.

3 It's advisable to take

A a long break. B a short break. C several short breaks.

4 If you don't take a break every day, you may

A be unhealthy. B make mistakes. C sleep during the working time.

5 You can keep your place clean by

A hiring a cleaner. B relying on parents. C buying more goods.

4.2 请听一段录音，并按照要求完成4.1中的题目。

4.3 请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

1 What's nocturnal behaviour?

A sleeping earlier than others B remaining out of bed longer at night C sleeping for shorter hours

2 Which group is likely to show nocturnal behaviour?

A adults B babies C teenagers

3 How can people deal with sleep issues?

A absorb a kind of chemical substance B sleep late at night C turn on the lights

4 Some teenagers sleep longer because

A they are lazy.

B they get bored so easily.

C they need more sleep.

5 What do most teenagers usually do?

A take classes and take part in activities

B take classes and play games

C play games and take part in activities

4.4 请再听一遍录音的节选，根据题目选出相应的信号词。

1 to introduce the factor that influences sleep

A the biggest problem B the most important C the one

2 to point out that the phenomenon is not rare

A similar B same C also

3 to point out the result of busy schedules

A apparently B obviously C particularly

4 to give some ways to deal with the problem

A for instance B such as C for example

Reading

1 词汇基础

1.1 请将下列人体所需营养物质的名称与其释义相匹配。

1 carbohydrate

2 fat

3 protein

4 vitamin

5 mineral

A a substance that is naturally present in the earth and is not formed from animal or vegetable matter, for example gold and salt; it is also present in food and drink and in the human body

B a substance such as sugar or starch that consists of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen, which is the source of energy and heat

C a substance, found within all living things, that forms the structure of muscles, organs, etc

D a white or yellow substance in the bodies of animals and humans, stored under the skin

E a natural substance found in food that is an essential part of what humans and animals eat to help them grow and stay healthy

1.2 请从方框中选择正确的单词并以其正确形式填空，完成句子。

gymnastics　skating　weightlifting　wrestling　marathon　badminton

1 _____ is a long race that needs a lot of energy, patience and determination.

2 In _____, it takes much muscle power and endurance to hold the last pose, finishing an entire set of moves.

3 The indoor ice rink has made _____ no longer an exclusive sport for winter.

4 If you want to enjoy the fun of _____, the quality of rackets and shuttlecocks is important.

5 Maintaining the balance and elegance is the key to _____.

6 In a professional _____ match, two people fight by holding each other and trying to throw or force the other one to the ground.

1.3 请阅读文章，为不同的人选择合适的饮食建议。

Four Keys to a Healthy Diet

No.1 Eat a Variety of Healthy Foods

Foods contain a wide range of nutrients and other nutritious substances. It is hard to know how many nutrients and other nutritious substances there are and what they all do. All we do know is that eating many different types of food will give all the health-promoting effects. To have a 'balanced diet', it's very important to introduce variety into your daily meals. Besides, if you can

have different kinds of food in your diet, the effects of pesticides or other toxic substances that exist in particular foods will be limited.

No.2 Reduce the Intake of Sugary Foods and Drinks and Refined Grains

These include foods and drinks such as cakes, sweets, chocolates, white bread, dried pasta, snack foods, fizzy drinks, and so on. When enjoying such foods and drinks, we may take in much more added sugar than needed. As a result, we will be more likely to have diabetes, heart disease, and other health problems, not to mention the effect of gaining weight. There is little dietary fibre in refined grain products which, if consumed in large quantities, can have similar effects on the body as eating sugary foods.

No.3 Reduce the Intake of Highly Processed Foods

When we cook and prepare raw ingredients at home, we are processing them. However, when we say 'processed foods', we are referring to those packaged commercial foods like hot dogs, margarine, ice cream, candy, and many other packaged snack foods. Highly processed foods are made under industrial conditions and they no longer contain the nutrients the raw ingredients originally contained. Sometimes, we can no longer recognise their original plant or animal sources. Such foods, which supply more than half the daily calories in most US households, lack key nutrients and fibre and are high in sugars and sodium.

No.4 Consume Vitamins and Minerals From Food, Not Pills

Many of us have the experience of taking vitamin pills. However, we should know that vitamin pills are not the same as vitamins from foods. Certainly, supplements can't replace a healthy diet. For many people, a basic multivitamin pill can offer some of the nutrients their regular diet lacks. In other cases, particularly for those with health problems, supplements containing folic acid, vitamin B12, calcium, and vitamin D may be suggested by doctors.

A Eat a Variety of Healthy Foods
B Reduce the Intake of Sugary Foods and Drinks and Refined Grains
C Reduce the Intake of Highly Processed Foods
D Consume Vitamins and Minerals From Food, Not Pills

1 Marisa thinks natural foods cannot offer enough nutrition, so she takes vitamin pills every day.

2 Jim always has lots of sweets, cookies, and cupcakes at home, and he eats them whenever he feels hungry.

3 Sara loves all kinds of meats, so she tend to take meat as her main food in daily meals.

4 Ellen always eats junk food like packaged bacon and hamburgers for dinner.

1.4 你还知道其他与健康饮食有关的单词或短语吗？请试着列举一些。

主题词汇

nutrient /'nju:triənt/ *n.* 营养物

carbohydrate /ˌkɑ:bəʊ'haɪdreɪt/ *n.* 碳水化合物

protein /'prəʊti:n/ *n.* 蛋白质

cholesterol /kə'lestərɒl/ *n.* 胆固醇

fibre /'faɪbə(r)/ *n.* 纤维

lactose /'læktəʊs/ *n.* 乳糖

vitamin /'vɪtəmɪn/ *n.* 维生素

supplement /'sʌplɪmənt/ *n.* 补充物，补给品

additive /'ædətɪv/ *n.* 添加剂

organic /ɔ:'gænɪk/ *adj.* 有机的

nutritious /nju'trɪʃəs/ *adj.* 有营养的

preserved /prɪ'zɜ:vd/ *adj.* 腌制的；保存的

ripen /'raɪpən/ *v.* 使成熟

eating disorder 进食障碍

dietary fibre 膳食纤维

saturated fat 饱和脂肪

unsaturated fat 不饱和脂肪

fitness club 健身俱乐部

aerobic /eə'rəʊbɪk/ *adj.* 需氧的

aerobic exercise 有氧健身运动

sprint /sprɪnt/ *n.* / *v.* 快速奔跑

press-up /'pres ʌp/ *n.* 俯卧撑

sit-up /'sɪt ʌp/ *n.* 仰卧起坐

2 能力培养

议论性文章

议论性文章是雅思阅读考试中经常出现的一类文章，占比较大，难度较高。记叙文以生动的描写来表达感情，说明文着重客观地介绍事物的特征、成因、功能等，议论文则不同，它重在阐述道理、发表见解。因此，议论文一般都有明确的观点、充分的论据以及合理的论证方式，在逻辑上比较严谨。

雅思阅读考试中的议论性文章总体来说分为两大类：

- **实验类：**实验类的议论文文章结构较为固定，主要围绕某个具体的实验，从实验背景、实验准备（实验方法、对象、变量等）、实验过程，以及实验结果与分析等方面循序渐进地展开。

- **逻辑论证类：**逻辑论证类的议论文通常对某个话题或问题进行论证，一般遵循介绍背景、提出观点、进一步论证观点、提出建议的论证结构。论证的对象不同，文章会采用不同的论证方式，包括：正反观点分析（for and against）、优缺点分析（pros and cons）、原因分析（cause analysis）和问题—解决方案（problem-solution）等。

任务1 **请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。**

E-cigarettes: Good or Bad?

A Everyone knows that smoking is bad for health. Besides, more and more people consider it is impolite to smoke in the presence of others because second-hand smoke can offend other people and even cause damage to their health. In fact, over the past few years, some traditional tobacco smokers have already made the switch to the electronic cigarettes, known as e-cigarettes, in the hope of eliminating the harmful effects of smoking.

B According to recent research, e-cigarettes contain nicotine like tobacco cigarettes, but there are no carcinogens in them which can cause a number of diseases. Besides, e-cigarettes have less 'second- and third-hand particulate matter'. Therefore, e-cigarettes appear to be a safe alternative for long-term smokers and can help them quit smoking.

C However, despite having these advantages, there are also many problems associated with e-cigarettes. For example, e-cigarettes still contain nicotine, which makes it difficult for people to stop smoking. Apart from that, e-cigarettes are just a fad for many people. Moreover, the long-term effect of e-cigarettes on health is not clear.

D As e-cigarettes become increasingly popular, over 10 per cent of adults in America, which amount to 20 per cent of Americans aged between 18 to 24, have at least tried them. So there are plenty of media reports about the pros and cons of e-cigarettes. According to an extensive report on e-cigarettes published by the National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine last year, the evidence of their effects on an individual's health is still quite limited.

E 'E-cigarettes cannot be simply categorised as either beneficial or harmful,' says David Eaton, the chair of the National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine. According to him, if e-cigarettes are used by younger people and teenagers, the negative effects of e-cigarettes should be of concern. In other circumstances, for example, when they are used by adult smokers to help them quit smoking, the long-term effects on health tend to be minimal.

F The report found that e-cigarettes might also contain toxic substances that are subsequently damaging people's health. However, those who smoked tobacco cigarettes in the past and later substituted them for e-cigarettes were discovered to have lower exposure to toxicants and carcinogens. The report also found that long-term e-cigarette users and tobacco cigarette smokers have similar exposure to nicotine. Evidence also suggests that some of the chemicals contained within e-cigarette substances have negative long-term health effects on the human body, such as DNA damage.

G With regard to the impact on breathing and lung capacity, the results are equally inconclusive, because there was no evidence in the report indicating that e-cigarettes were less harmful than traditional tobacco cigarettes.

1 请快速浏览文章，判断这篇文章的论证方式。

_____

2 请从方框中为前三个段落选择正确的写作目的。

1) Paragraph A _____ 2) Paragraph B _____

3) Paragraph C _____

A to introduce what e-cigarettes are

B to examine the reasons why people smoke e-cigarettes

C to show the advantages of e-cigarettes

D to show the disadvantages of e-cigarettes

3 According to the passage, what is the author's conclusion on e-cigarettes?

A The advantages of e-cigarettes outweigh their disadvantages.

B The disadvantages of e-cigarettes outweigh their advantages.

C It is still not clear if the advantages of e-cigarettes outweigh their disadvantages.

D E-cigarettes are excellent and healthy substitutes for tobacco cigarettes.

任务2 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

Doing Warm-up Exercise Before Working Out

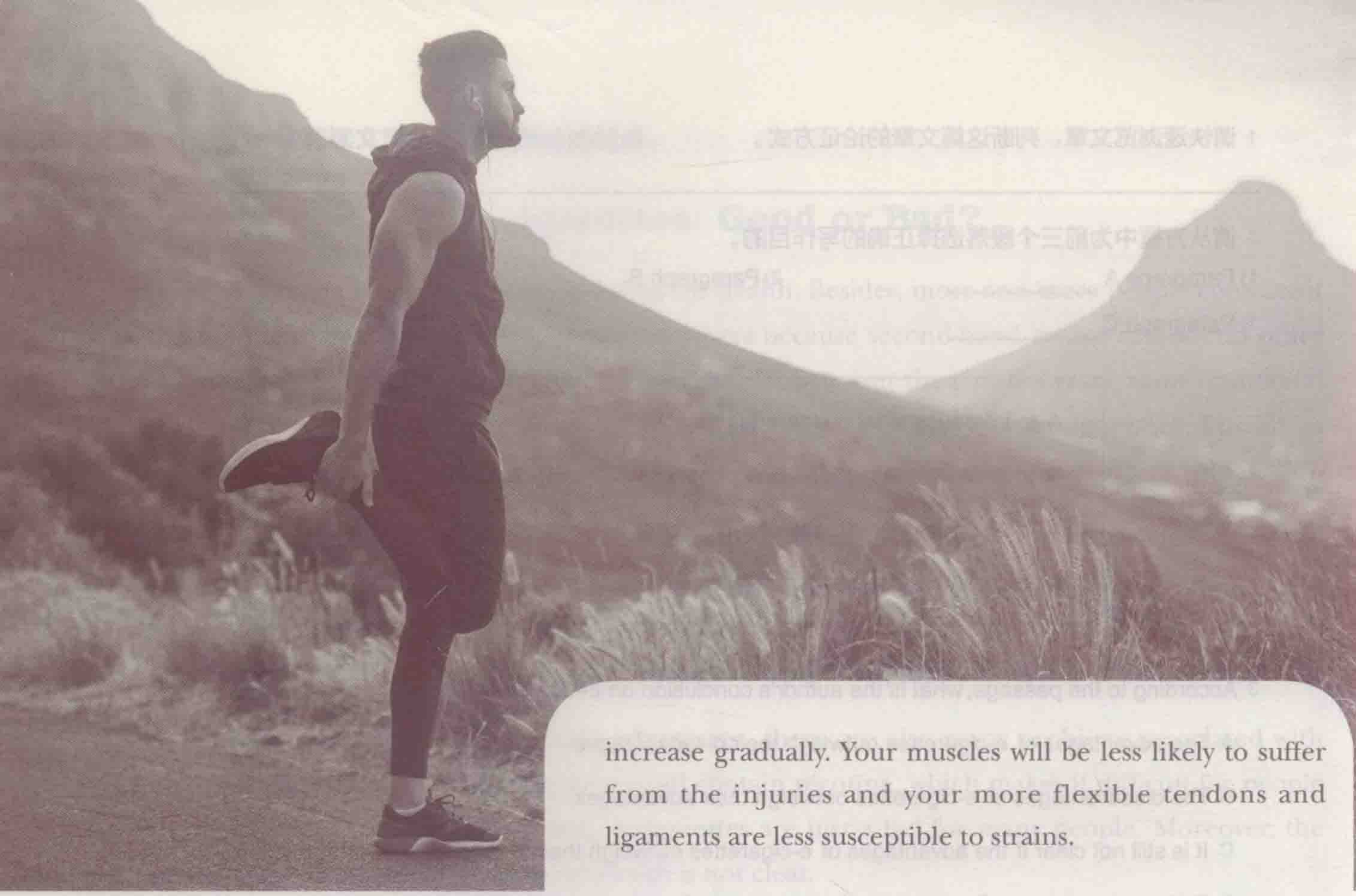
Doing warm-up exercise before working out is very important in many ways. Warm-up exercise can help to increase your heart rate, warm your muscles, tendons and ligaments, and prepare your mind. It is natural for you to think of stretching when we mention warm-up exercise, but they are different.

The Importance of Warm-up Exercise

Imagine it's a freezing cold day, and you're on your way to work and your car is on the driveway. You don't want to start driving when the car is cold inside. The first thing you do is to warm the car by running the engine for a while and turning the heater on. That is exactly how a pre-exercise warm-up works. If your body is too cold before exercising, you're more likely to pull muscles or do other damage to your body. That's why it's essential to warm up properly.

Warm Up to Increase Blood Circulation

A good way to get your body ready for an intense workout is to go for a light jog for up to 10 minutes. It will increase your blood circulation to the muscles, tendons and ligaments. This is just like putting oil on the gears of your bike before going for a long cycle ride. Warm-up exercise will prepare the different parts of your body to work together. Your heart rate will



increase gradually. Your muscles will be less likely to suffer from the injuries and your more flexible tendons and ligaments are less susceptible to strains.

Warm-up Exercise as a Form of Mental Preparation

Warm-up exercise is also important as a form of mental preparation. Mind and body are closely related. Warm-up exercise can make your mind ease into the workout. Imagine you are going to take part in a long-distance run, like a marathon, your body will experience a great deal of press. You need to be mentally prepared for the physical challenge. Warm-up exercise, as a form of mental preparation, will prepare you to endure and benefit from the toughest aspects of the long run.

The Difference Between Warm-up Exercise and Stretching

Warm-up exercise and stretching are different terms although many people tend to ignore their differences. Both are important for an optimal workout. Warm-up exercise may involve different forms of activities, such as walking, jogging, and rope-jumping, to increase the body temperature and slowly prepare the body for what is to come, while stretching mainly focuses on the muscles.

Therefore, it is important to make a distinction between the two principles. For example, if a sprinter begins his race without raising his body temperature through proper warm-up exercise, he will be likely to suffer from the injuries to almost every part of his body because the whole body is not prepared. On the other hand, if the sprinter warms up but only skips stretching, he will be more likely to suffer from the injuries to the muscles because they don't have enough warmth to achieve optimal stretch.

To enjoy your workout, you should have adequate warm-up exercise and a certain period of stretching first. A good preparation for your heart rate and muscles will prevent you from suffering from the injuries in the workout.

1 请快速浏览文章，判断这篇文章的论证方式。

---

2 *Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B**, **C** or **D**.*

1) What is the passage trying to do?

A to suggest that people do warm-up exercise before workout

B to show the adverse effects of warm-up exercise

C to introduce the details about how to do warm-up exercise properly

D to give successful examples of athletes who value warm-up exercise

2) What are the two main reasons why people should do warm-up exercise?

A to increase blood circulation and warm ligaments and tendons

B to lower physical stress and absorb more oxygen

C to do mental preparation and stretch muscles

D to increase blood circulation and do mental preparation

3) What is the function of the last three paragraphs?

A to show opposite opinions against the main idea

B to demonstrate a guide to the specific warm-up exercise

C to introduce the third benefit of warm-up exercise

D to be an additional supporting information to the main idea

3 题型讲解

段落信息配对题

段落信息配对题是雅思阅读考试中匹配题的一种题型。该题型的考查形式是给出一系列的句子信息，这些信息均是对文章不同段落中细节信息的改写，考生需要判断该信息所在的段落。题目难度较大，对考生的水平要求较高。

段落信息配对题着重考查信息筛选与定位的能力，而段落内容的顺序是与文章结构紧密相关的，因此，把握文章的结构能够提高信息定位的准确率。例如，当题目中出现overview，history等涉及写作背景的关键词时，通常可以在文章的前两段定位答案，因为研究型论文的写作背景通常在文章的前四段；而遇到future，advice这类关键词时，通常可以在文章的末尾段落找到答案，因为有关研究的未来方向和提出建议的内容通常会放在最后。

Tips

段落信息配对题通常是乱序出题，即题目出现的顺序并非依照文章的顺序。

在解答段落信息配对题时，要注意题目要求中是否出现“*You may use any letter more than once.*”的提示，如果出现了，就表示至少有两个句子的信息会出现在同一个段落里。考生需要仔细阅读每道题目，根据其中的关键词定位到原文中的内容，这对于考生的阅读理解与同义替换能力均有较高要求。

任务1 请阅读下列句子，选出与其对应的信息。

1 Green smoothies have become increasingly popular in recent years because more and more people realise the importance of having breakfast and want to have a nutritious breakfast with minimum effort and time.

A the wide acceptance of green smoothies

B the health benefits of green smoothies

C the way to prepare smoothies

D the major group who drinks smoothies

2 People can benefit from drinking green smoothies in many respects since there are many nutrients which can improve the skin, help prevent signs of aging, and promote overall well-being.

A the common perception of green smoothies

B the benefits of green smoothies to your skin

C the nutrients that green smoothies contain

D the best time to drink green smoothies

3 However, some experts state that a really healthy green smoothie needs a lot of greens, among which at least 60 to 80 per cent are alkaline ones such as fennel, celery, cucumber, kale, romaine lettuce and spinach.

A experts' advice on the flavour of a really healthy smoothie

B the most popular recipe for a tasty smoothie

C the calories a really healthy smoothie usually carries

D experts' advice on the greens that a really healthy smoothie should contain

任务2 请阅读文章，将文中画线的句子与其对应的信息相匹配。

Green Smoothies Are Good for Your Health

A Green smoothies have become increasingly popular in recent years because more and more people realise the importance of having breakfast and want to have a nutritious breakfast with minimum effort and time. Experts say that these smoothies are so healthy and balanced that they are the best choice for our breakfast as it can boost concentration and create a better mental and physical performance.

B People can benefit from drinking green smoothies in many respects since there are many nutrients which can improve the skin, help prevent signs of aging, and promote overall well-being. 1) People trying to lose weight can benefit from these drinks since low calories are found in them. 2) They are also helping to aid digestion because they don't have to be chewed and are high in fibre content. According to reports, 70 million people are suffering from some kind of digestive problem. They may benefit from these drinks.

C 3) It's much easier for people to take in a lot of fruits and vegetables by drinking green smoothies, especially for those who do not actually like the taste of leafy greens. However, some experts state that a really healthy green smoothie needs a lot of greens, among which at least 60 to 80 per cent are alkaline ones such as fennel, celery, cucumber, kale, romaine lettuce and spinach.

D 4) The strong flavour of such a 'green' substance is then balanced out by the addition of fruits, such as apples, papayas, pineapples, bananas, mangoes, kiwi fruit, pears, plums, oranges, and strawberries. The combination of vegetables and fruits in your smoothies depends entirely on your own personal flavour and your favourite vitamins or minerals. It is recommended that you select one or two products, then add some milk, coconut juice or green tea as you like. After that, you need to give the drink some texture by adding ingredients such as oats, nuts (cashew nuts, pecans, almonds, walnuts), ground flaxseeds, avocados, or simply crushed ice.

1 the improvement that can make the smoothie tastier _____

2 weight loss as one of the perks _____

3 the advantage in smooth digestion _____

4 the motivation for more vegetables and fruits consumption _____

任务3 **请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。**

The Health Benefits of Aromatherapy

A Some people find that massaging their skin with herbal oils after a stressful day helps them to relax, while others may find that meditating with the scent of joss sticks or scented oils can improve their attention. This is because some fragrances can reduce stress and boost mood. While some yoga studios and spas tend to overstate the health benefits of aromatherapy, this isn't always the case. It is important to know more about aromatherapy before you give it a try.

B Aromatherapy works by using essential oils or aromatic liquids to improve health and overall well-being. The therapy takes effect when the scents you inhale send messages through your nervous system to the part of your brain that controls emotions. Lavender is a particularly popular scent as it induces a feeling of calm.

C Ancient Egypt is the birthplace of aromatherapy which was mainly used to treat diseases at that time. Nowadays, essential oils are becoming more and more popular in spas. They are mainly used to relieve labour pains in childbirth and tackle insomnia. People with cancer are often advised to have aromatherapy as a way of reducing the side effects of their treatment.

D Research studying the benefits of aromatherapy has found that some fragrances have a positive impact on moods and may even be used to treat certain diseases. A university school of medicine studied patients diagnosed with depression and discovered that exposure to citrus fragrance reduced their dependence on antidepressant drugs. Another university study found that orange oil reduces anxiety in female patients in dental clinics. Also, growing evidence suggests that lavender oil may be able to treat certain neurological disorders because of its effect on the brain.

E Studies show that aromatherapy does undoubtedly have health benefits in some ways, but there is limited evidence that it can reduce pain or alter heart rate, blood pressure, or heal wounds. More serious diseases, such as cancer and Parkinson's, can't be treated effectively with aromatherapy. Anyone who wants to use aromatherapy as a complementary therapy to treat any disease is advised to seek advice from medical experts in advance. However, it's absolutely acceptable to put some lavender oil on your pillow to help you sleep or take an aromatic bubble bath to unwind after a stressful day.

The passage consists of five paragraphs, **A**–**E**.

Which paragraph contains the following information?

NB *You may use any letter more than once.*

1 the usage of aromatherapy in ancient times

2 the benefit of aromatherapy to female patients

3 the limitation of aromatherapy in treating severe diseases

4 the depression-easing effect of aromatherapy

5 the natural characteristic of lavender

4 课后练习

请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

Are Artificial Sweeteners Bad for Your Health?

A Some people are sugar addicts. However, eating too much sugar can have a negative effect

on our health. Those who have a sweet tooth know that they need to have less sugar in their diet, but it is not easy for them to resist their cravings for something sweet. In order to satisfy them, some producers start to use sugar alternatives like artificial sweeteners.

B Some sugar alternatives that are found in diet food and products are labelled as 'sugar-free'. These alternatives usually contain low levels of calories and taste sweeter than sugar. As a result, these sugar alternatives often appeal to people trying to control their sugar intake or lose weight.

C According to recent research, the potential health benefits of artificial sweeteners include weight control, reduced sugar levels in the body, as well as improved dental hygiene. Nonetheless, the research also notices a number of health problems associated with sweeteners. For decades, some critics have claimed that these products can be linked to a number of health problems. Back in the 1970s, a study linked artificial sweeteners such as saccharin to certain types of cancer in laboratory rats. Although the experiments did not provide conclusive proof, the results of the research were alarming enough to cause food regulation and standards authorities in the United States to limit the use of artificial sweeteners in some products.

D The recent research finds that there is limited evidence to suggest that any products already on sale in the United States containing artificial sweeteners were in any way linked to serious health problems.

E But the problem is that artificial sweeteners may deceive people into believing that they aren't consuming high levels of calories while in reality they are. As a result, they prefer sweeter foods to those that are nutritious in their diet. In addition, sweeteners can change the way we taste food because hyper-intense sweeteners may limit our tolerance for more complex tastes. The research also notes that people who consume high amounts of diet beverages are more likely to suffer from health issues, including metabolic syndrome and cardiovascular diseases.

F It seems that a moderate intake of sweeteners is the best approach, as not all sweeteners are harmful to health. Among some natural sweet alternatives, stevia taken from the leaves of the stevia rebaudiana plant, erythritol found naturally in fruits, and xylitol found naturally in fruits and vegetables are recommended.

The passage consists of six paragraphs, **A–F**.

Which paragraph contains the following information?

NB *You may use any letter more than once.*

1 how foods with sweeteners are labelled currently

2 some natural substitutes for sugar and sweeteners

3 potential benefits of sweeteners

4 a research on the connection between sweeteners and cancer

5 the negative effect of overconsumption of sugar

6 the risk of consuming too many diet drinks

Speaking

1 词汇基础

1.1 请从方框中选择正确的短语填写到相应的图片下方。

do yoga　　keep a healthy diet　　play a brain training game　　get enough sleep



1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____

1.2 下面是一些描述生活方式的句子，画线部分表示可以被替换的内容。请试着用这些句式谈论你的生活方式。

1 I spend a lot of time sitting on the sofa and watching television.

2 I don't really do anything specific to keep in shape.

3 I usually go for a walk after dinner and work out twice a week.

4 One of my ways to keep healthy is to keep a balanced diet.

5 An eight-hour sleep every day provides me with enough energy for my study.

2 能力培养

2.1 语法训练——现在分词和过去分词

❶ 现在分词

be + 现在分词作谓语

- They are doing the warm-up exercise. 他们正在做热身运动。
- I'll be waiting for you at the entrance to the gym. 我会在健身房门口等你。

- She **is playing** sudoku to relax after a hard day. 辛苦一天后，她正在玩数独游戏来放松。

现在分词作表语

- The tea smells **inviting** and tastes fresh. 这茶香气诱人，味道清新。
- That cake looks **tempting**. 那块蛋糕看上去很诱人。
- Kart racing seems **thrilling**. 卡丁车比赛似乎很刺激。

现在分词作定语

- a **record-breaking** jump 破纪录的一跳
- Everyone may suffer from a rather **depressing** time, but we have to face it.
  每个人可能都会经历一段相当压抑的时期，但我们要面对它。
- In the last few years, teenagers started showing a **growing** interest in both basketball and football.
  在过去的几年里，青少年开始对篮球和足球表现出越来越浓厚的兴趣。

现在分词作补语

- She felt her heart **beating** fast. 她感到心跳得很快。
- If the weather is nice, you'll see people **walking** around the beach.
  如果天气好，你会看到人们在海滩上散步。
- I can't imagine grandpa **riding** a motorbike. 我想象不出爷爷骑摩托车的样子。

现在分词作状语

- Over 3,000 people were there **watching** the Formula 1 Chinese Grand Prix in Shanghai.
  有三千多人在现场观看了一级方程式赛车中国大奖赛上海站的比赛。
- **Turning** around, she saw an ambulance driving up. 转过身，她看见一辆救护车开了过来。
- Sara hurt her arm while **playing** rugby. 萨拉打橄榄球时伤了胳膊。

❷ 现在分词与动名词的区别

作定语

现在分词作定语往往表示所修饰名词的动作；动名词作定语表示目的、用途等。

现在分词	动名词
a **sleeping** baby 一个在睡觉的婴儿	**sleeping** pills 安眠药
a **running** boy 一个在跑步的男孩	**running** track 跑道
the **waiting** crowd 正在等候的人群	the **waiting** room 等候室

作表语

现在分词作表语表示主语的性质和特征，动名词作表语说明主语的内容。

- The match is **exciting**. 那场比赛令人兴奋。
  （现在分词作表语，表示比赛的特征是让人兴奋的。）
- My hobby is **racing cars**. 我的爱好是赛车。
  （动名词作表语，说明主语的内容。）

作主语或宾语

动名词可以作主语或宾语，现在分词不可以。

- **Playing sports** allows our muscles to stretch and grow. 运动使我们的肌肉伸展并发育。
  （动名词作主语。）
- I admire the man's **working out** every day. 我很佩服这个人，他每天都锻炼身体。
  （动名词作宾语。）

❸ 过去分词

助动词 / be + 过去分词作谓语

- I **have tried** to take part in a bunch of different sports. 我试着参加过很多不同的运动。
- Our joints **were** seriously **hurt** due to excessive exercise.
  由于运动过量，我们的关节严重受损。

过去分词作表语

- I am awfully **worried**. Mummy is ill. 我心急如焚，妈妈病了。
- His sport suits were **covered** with sweat and dust after the marathon.
  马拉松比赛后，他的运动服上布满了汗水和灰尘。
- I'm extremely **satisfied** with the match score. 我对比赛成绩十分满意。

过去分词作定语

- **Frozen** food is a convenience for those who are too lazy to cook. 冷冻食品为那些懒得做饭的人提供了便利。
- She nodded her head with a **forced** smile when seeing the salad. 她看到色拉后，点了点头，勉强挤出了一丝微笑。
- Tony made his lunch with **smoked** ham and **fried** eggs. 托尼把熏火腿和煎蛋当作午餐。

过去分词作补语

- We'll get the athlete **X-rayed**. 我们要给这位运动员做X光检查。
- I've recently had my appendix **removed**. 我最近做了切除阑尾的手术。

练习1 请选择括号中单词的正确形式并写出其在句中所作的成分。

1 All national team members will have their ankles (testing / tested) tomorrow. _____ _____

2 There are many kinds of (interesting / interested) fitness equipment in the gym. _____ _____

3 (Jogging / Jogged) in the park, she felt relaxed and comfortable. _____ _____

练习2 **请用已学词汇和语法描述下列图片所展示的话题。**



Example

I am a big fan of sports.
My favourite type is...

2.2 发音训练——连读

在同一意群内，由一个音自然地向另一个音滑动，中间不能有停顿，即一个单词的末尾经常与下一个单词的开头连起来读，我们把这种现象称为“连读”。

请听录音，跟读模仿以下例句，纠正自己的发音。

元音连读：前一个单词结尾的元音与后一个单词开头的元音相连

You have to be on time for the yoga class. 你必须按时上瑜伽课。
/biː//ɒn/

I see it by accident. 我偶然看到的。
/siː//ɪt/

May I ask you out? 我能约你出去吗?
/juː//aʊt/

辅音 + 元音连读：前一个单词结尾的辅音与后一个单词开头的元音相连

I would love to learn how to ride a horse. 我很想学骑马。
/raɪd//ə/

I am fond of walking because it is a great exercise for my body.
/fɒnd//əv/
我喜欢散步，因为散步对身体有好处。

If there is any equipment in the fitness centre that suits your interest, by all means, check it out.
/tʃek//ɪt//aʊt/
如果你对健身中心的任何一项器械感兴趣，一定要去看看。

r 连读：前一个单词结尾的/r/音与后一个单词的元音相连

Taking exercise regularly is extremely important for health, for example, jogging and swimming.
/fər//ɪg'zɑ:mpl/

定期运动对健康非常重要，比如慢跑和游泳。

There is a fitness centre that has an Olympic-sized swimming pool.
/ðeər//ɪz/

这里有一家健身中心，配备了具有奥运会规格的泳池。

Each interval of the meditation wakes you for a moment, but you may not be aware of it.
/fər//ə/

每次冥想之间的间隔都会让你清醒一会儿，但你可能并未意识到。

3 话题讲解

3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——健康



你觉得自己的日常生活健康吗?

我觉得我的身体很健康，因为我们每天都有体育活动，而且我早睡早起，饮食也很规律。





不错!

可我觉得自己心理不健康，我好像有一点强迫症……

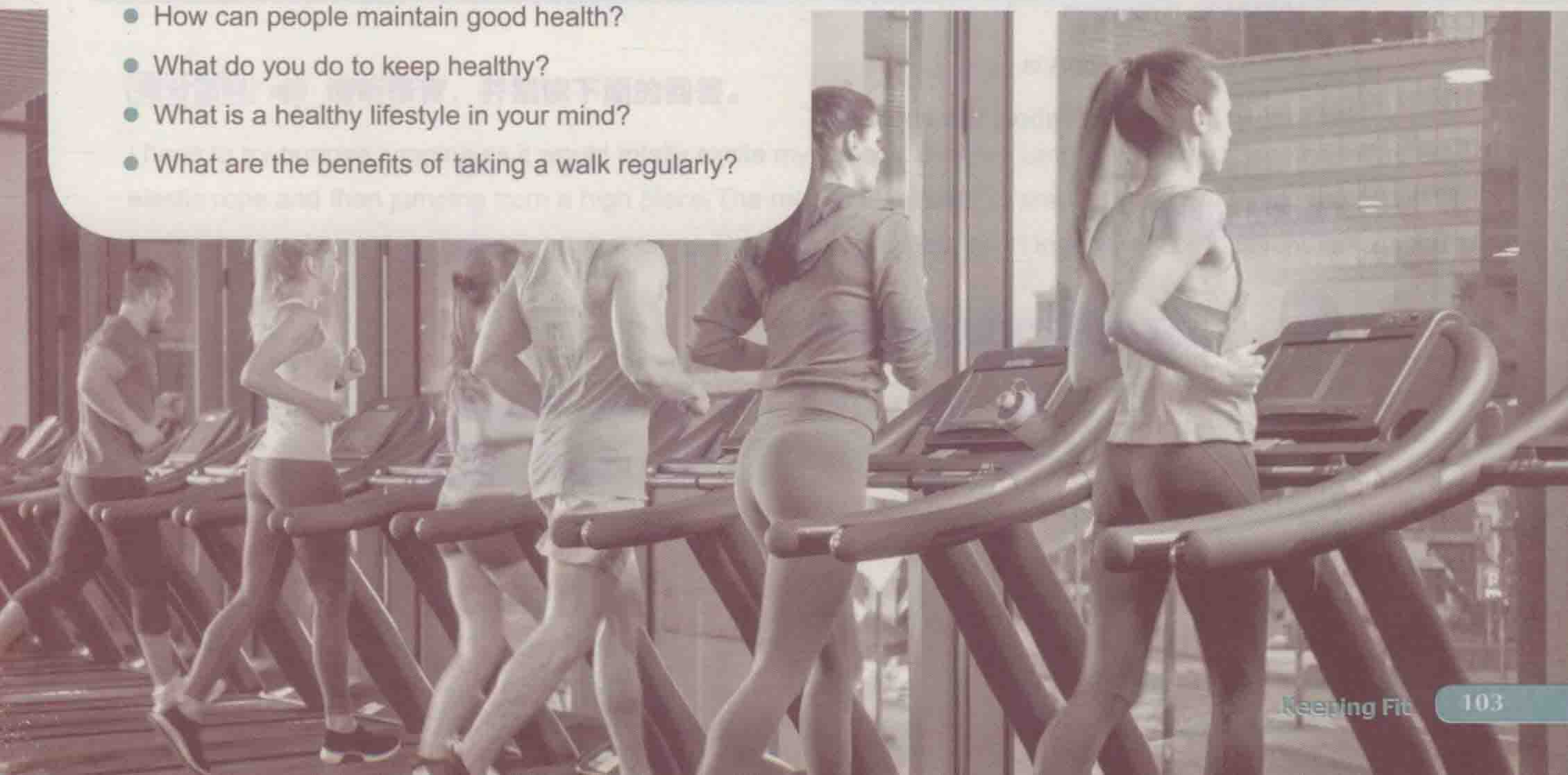




这在现代人的生活中很常见，既然意识到了，就要注意调节。

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

- How can people maintain good health?
- What do you do to keep healthy?
- What is a healthy lifestyle in your mind?
- What are the benefits of taking a walk regularly?



话题表达

work out 锻炼

a balanced diet 均衡饮食

eat on a regular basis 有规律地进餐

skip meals 不吃饭

be on a diet 节食

dairy products 乳制品

stay in a good mood 保持心情愉悦

have a positive and optimistic mindset 拥有积极乐观的心态

People can maintain good health by... 人们可以通过……保持健康

To keep healthy, I try my best to... 为了保持健康，我尽最大的努力去……

Every day, I want to consume food that... 每一天，我都渴望吃到……食物

I exercise daily/twice a week/weekly to... 我每天/每周两次/每周锻炼来……

A healthy lifestyle can be described as... 健康的生活方式可以描述为……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

We can maintain good health by getting sufficient sleep every day. We can also eat on a regular basis, and should not skip meals or have late-night snacks. To keep healthy, I am trying my best to consume various food from fruits and vegetables to meat, grains, and dairy products. Having a positive mindset is also quite important for a healthy lifestyle.

3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——运动

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

Describe an exciting sport you know.

You should say:

what the sport is

what skills it requires

how exciting the sport is

and explain how you feel about this sport.

思路解析与拓展



你了解哪些比较刺激的运动吗?

那就是极限运动了，比如蹦极、跳伞、攀岩等。这些运动刺激性强、挑战性高，受很多人喜欢。





嗯，尤其受到年轻人的喜欢。但是在进行这些运动的时候，除了掌握相关的技巧和携带必要的装备外，参与者要始终把生命安全放在首位。

可以从这方面入手，聊聊极限运动。如果没有这类经验，也可以看一看相关的影视作品来积累素材。





好主意！

话题表达

a memorable story 一个难忘的故事

sweep the world 风靡全球

excite one's senses 刺激某人的感官

pull back 拉回

extreme sports 极限运动

bungee jumping 蹦极

rock climbing 攀岩

parkour /pɑ:'kɔ:(r)/ *n.* 跑酷

skateboarding /'skeɪtbɔ:dɪŋ/ *n.* 滑板运动

marathon /'mærəθən/ *n.* 马拉松赛跑

I hope to try...as it would... 我希望试一试……，因为它能……

For me, I believe that I wouldn't... 对我来说，我相信我不会……

In fact, I feel that I would... 事实上，我觉得我会……

During my spare time, I enjoy... 在业余时间，我喜欢……

During holidays, I may...in the mornings or evenings in summer, if the weather is not too hot or humid. 在假期里，如果天气不太热或不太潮湿的话，在夏天的早晨或晚上，我可能……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

I hope to try bungee jumping as it would totally excite my senses. Bungee jumping involves tying oneself to an elastic rope and then jumping from a high place. The rope is supposed to prevent you from hitting the ground, and make you bounce up and down a few times. People can play this sport in a variety of locations across the world.

To be honest, there is nothing special to learn when trying this seemingly unsafe sport. A crucial quality it requires is having a brave mind.

For me, I believe that I wouldn't be scared when standing high. In fact, I feel that I would be eager to take the jump and enjoy the feeling of flying like a bird.

My friends used to tell me that extreme sports would be entertaining and joyful, so I will go to enjoy this activity when there is a chance. After experiencing this adventurous sport, I will have an impressive story to share with my relatives and friends for the rest of my life.

4 课后练习

4.1 请阅读下面信息卡中的内容，并为你喜欢的运动制作类似的卡片。

Sport	Table Tennis
Where is it played?	on a table tennis table
What equipment is needed to play it?	a ping-pong ball, a pair of bats / paddles
Words and expressions frequently used to describe the sport	Scoring: point, game, set, match People: player, trainer / coach Match description: The Chinese player is awesome. What a great shot!
Why do you like this sport?	The Chinese are extremely skilled at playing table tennis. A few ping-pong players, who went on to become world champions, were trained in my hometown. I'm so proud of them, and I'm really enthusiastic about this sport.

4.2 请回答以下问题。

- What are the dangers of having no regular relaxation?
- In the future, do you think you will enjoy walking or prefer using some forms of transportation? [Why?]
- Describe something you do / did that is / was good for your health.
  You should say:
  what you do / did
  how often you do / did it
  whether you do / did this activity alone or with other people
  and explain why it is / was good for your health.
- Describe something you usually do to relax.
  You should say:
  what it is
  where you do it
  how often you do it
  and explain why this activity relaxes you.

Writing

1 词汇基础

1.1 请根据中文提示，将下列单词补充完整。

1 慢跑　j_g　　2 治愈，治疗　c_r_

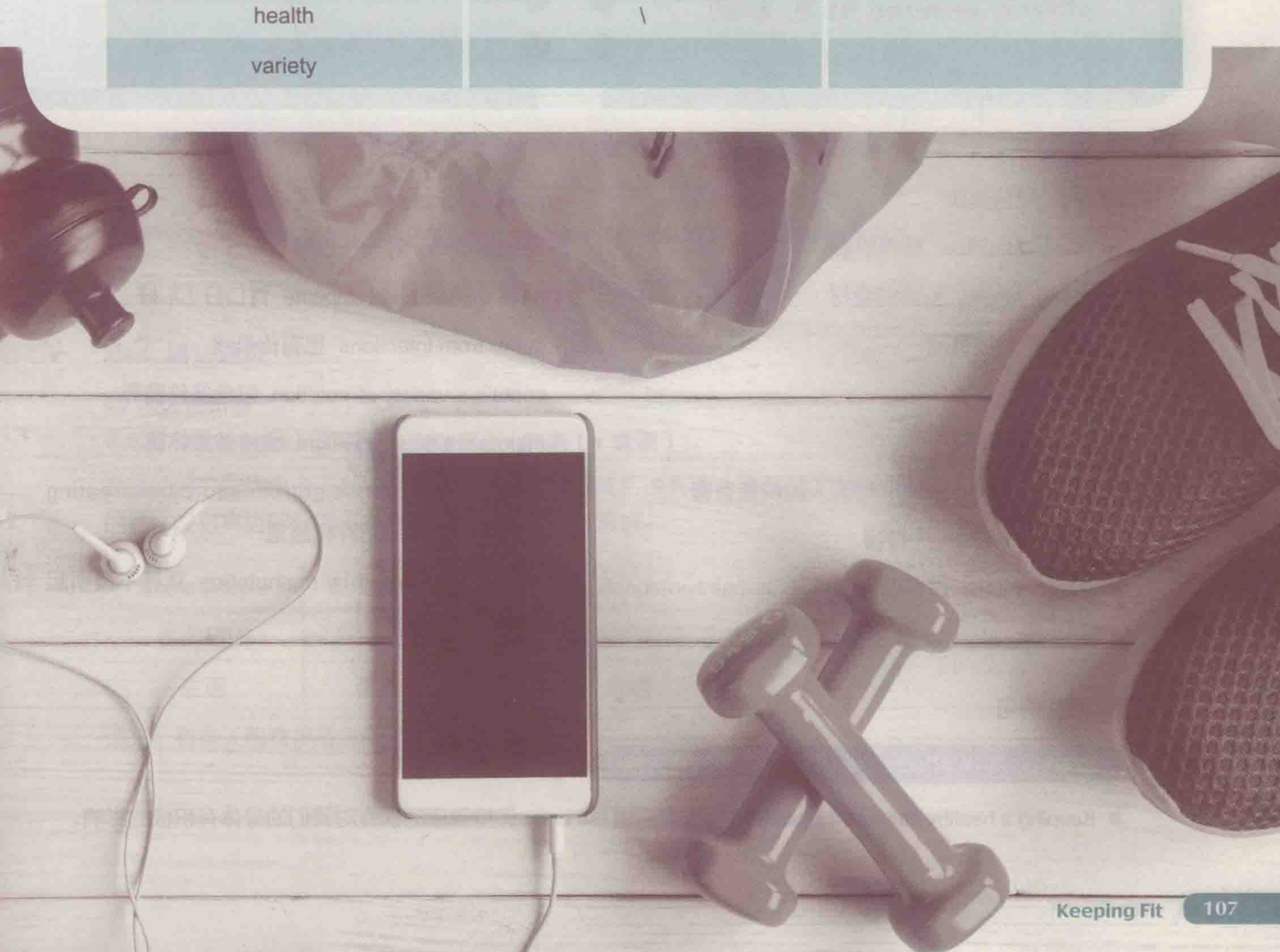
3 危及　e_da_g_r　　4 消化不良　i_di_es_ion

5 超重　ov_rw_ig_t　　6 病毒　v_r_s

7 疲劳，疲倦　ti_e_n_ss　　8 温和的；中等的　m_d_r_te

1.2 请根据表格所给单词填空，画“\”处不需要填写。

名词	动词	形容词
allergy	\	
	\	obese
benefit		
harm		
health	\	
variety		



2 能力培养

2.1 词汇表达

❶ 核心单词及其派生词

energy /'enədʒi/ *n.* 能量；精力

energetic /ˌenə'dʒetɪk/ *adj.* 精力充沛的

vigour /'vɪgə(r)/ *n.* 活力

vigorous /'vɪgərəs/ *adj.* 精力旺盛的；有力的

allergy /'ælədʒi/ *n.* 过敏症

allergic /ə'lɜ:dʒɪk/ *adj.* 过敏的

diet /'daɪət/ *n.* / *v.* 节食

dietitian /ˌdaɪə'tɪʃn/ *n.* 营养学家

campaign /kæm'peɪn/ *n.* 运动 *v.* 发起运动

campaigner /kæm'peɪnə(r)/ *n.* 运动领导者

athlete /'æθli:t/ *n.* 运动员

athletic /æθ'letɪk/ *adj.* 强壮的；运动的

attribute /'ætrɪbju:t/ *n.* 属性，特征

/ə'trɪbju:t/ *v.* 把……归因于

attribution /ˌætrɪ'bju:ʃn/ *n.* 归因；归属

impair /ɪm'peə(r)/ *v.* 削弱；损害

impairment /ɪm'peəmənt/ *n.* 损伤；缺陷

immune /ɪ'mju:n/ *adj.* 免疫的

immunity /ɪ'mju:nəti/ *n.* 免疫力

depress /dɪ'pres/ *v.* 使沮丧

depression /dɪ'preʃn/ *n.* 抑郁症；沮丧，消沉

prevent /prɪ'vent/ *v.* 阻止；预防

prevention /prɪ'venʃn/ *n.* 阻止；预防

❷ 常用短语

keep fit 保持健康

have a healthy diet 健康饮食

fresh ingredients 新鲜的食材

junk food 垃圾食品

fast food 快餐

lose weight 减肥

do harm to one's health 对某人的健康有害

be harmful to 对……有害

excessive intake 过量摄入

a sedentary lifestyle 久坐不动的生活方式

psychological pressure 心理压力

be allergic to 对……过敏

have a good / bad appetite 胃口好 / 不好

suffer from infections 患有传染病

contain a variety of nutrition 包含各种营养

maintain a healthy weight 维持健康体重

obesity and overweight caused by overeating 饮食过量引起的肥胖和超重

diseases triggered by malnutrition 营养不良引起的疾病

❸ 写作例句

exert positive effects on... 对……产生有利影响

- Keeping a healthy diet **exerts positive effects on** our body. 保持健康的饮食对我们的身体有积极的影响。

have a negative / harmful effect / influence / impact on... 对……产生不利影响

- The sedentary lifestyle **has a negative effect on** our health.
  久坐不动的生活方式会对我们的健康产生不利影响。

have the duty / obligation / responsibility to... 有责任……

- Individuals **have the responsibility to** keep healthy.
  每个人都要对自己的健康负责。

raise people's awareness of... 提高人们……方面的意识

- Authority of health should **raise public awareness of** having a healthy diet.
  官方健康机构应该提高公众对健康饮食的意识。

练习 **请从方框中选择正确的单词替换下列句子中的画线部分，并将句子写在横线上。**

nutritious	various	recommended	obese	dietitians

1 Fast food is not as <u>good for our body</u> as fresh vegetables and fruits.

_____

2 It is strongly <u>advised</u> that people should at least have fresh food every two days.

_____

3 A healthy diet should include <u>a lot of different</u> vitamins and minerals.

_____

4 Some people cannot resist the temptation to eat junk food, so they become <u>fat</u> gradually.

_____

5 Leading <u>experts on diet and nutrition</u> recommend eating fruits and vegetables every day.

_____

2.2 语法重点

❶ 主谓宾句型

句型结构为：主语 + 谓语（及物动词）+ 宾语（+ 状语）

及物动词的动作由主语发出，作用的对象为紧随其后的宾语，所以宾语就是主语动作的承受者。及物动词的动作没有宾语部分就不完整，所以必须要带有宾语。

Some people	like	challenging dangerous sports.
名词短语	及物动词	动名词短语
主语	谓语	宾语

译文：有些人喜欢挑战危险的运动。

City dwellers	should increase	outdoor activities	in their spare time.
名词短语	助动词 + 及物动词	名词短语	介词短语
主语	谓语	宾语	状语

译文：城市居民应该在他们的闲暇时间增加户外活动。

注意：一些常用的不及物动词有时也可以用作及物动词，但意思通常有所不同。

Farmers	grow	a lot of vegetables and fruits	due to the increasing demand.
名词	及物动词	名词短语	介词短语
主语	谓语	宾语	状语

译文：由于需求的增加，农民种植了大量的蔬菜和水果。

❷ 主谓双宾句型

句型结构为：主语 + 谓语（及物动词）+ 间接宾语 + 直接宾语（+ 状语）

该句型中，及物动词的后面有两个宾语，一般一个为“人”，一个为“事物”。表示“人”的宾语表示动作是对谁做的或为谁做的，通常称为间接宾语；表示“事物”的宾语是谓语动词的动作承受者，通常称为直接宾语。因此，这类及物动词也称为双宾动词。

一般情况下，直接宾语和间接宾语的位置可以互换而意思不变，但需要在间接宾语前添加介词，即：间接宾语（人）+ 直接宾语（事物）= 直接宾语（事物）+ 介词 + 间接宾语（人）。根据直接宾语和间接宾语之间所用的介词的不同，可以分为以下三种句式：

主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语 = 主语 + 谓语 + 直接宾语 + to + 间接宾语

Gym memberships	give	people	the opportunity to burn off excess calories.
名词短语	及物动词	名词	名词短语
主语	谓语	间接宾语	直接宾语

Gym memberships	give	the opportunity to burn off excess calories	to	people.
名词短语	及物动词	名词短语	介词	名词
主语	谓语	直接宾语		间接宾语

译文：成为健身房会员让人们有机会消耗掉多余的卡路里。

主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语 = 主语 + 谓语 + 直接宾语 + for + 间接宾语

More exercise	builds	us	a healthy and strong body.
名词短语	及物动词	代词	名词短语
主语	谓语	间接宾语	直接宾语

Tips

- 常见的后接介词to的双宾动词有：teach，give，tell，show，sell，send，take，bring，read，write，throw，offer，promise，pass，hand，lend，serve，award，feed，grant，owe。
- 直接宾语比较长时，通常会放在间接宾语后面，以使整个句子的结构维持平衡。

More exercise	builds	a healthy and strong body	for	us.
名词短语	及物动词	名词短语	介词	代词
主语	谓语	直接宾语		间接宾语

译文：更多的锻炼帮我们塑造了健康而强壮的身体。

> **Tips**
>
> 常见的后接介词for的双宾动词有：buy, get, find, order, save, make, leave, build, fetch, cook。

主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语 = 主语 + 谓语 + 直接宾语 + to / for + 间接宾语

The singer	sang	the audience	a song	at the opening ceremony of a world sporting event.
名词短语	及物动词	名词短语	名词短语	介词短语
主语	谓语	间接宾语	直接宾语	状语

The singer	sang	a song	to / for	the audience	at the opening ceremony of a world sporting event.
名词短语	及物动词	名词短语	介词	名词短语	介词短语
主语	谓语	直接宾语		间接宾语	状语

译文：在一场世界体育盛会的开幕式上，这位歌手为观众们演唱了一首歌。

练习 **以下五个句子中的谓语被打乱了顺序，请为每个句子选择合适的谓语，然后将完整的句子写在横线上，有的句子中需要补充介词。**

	主语	谓语	间接宾语	直接宾语	状语
1	To host the Olympic Games	choose	the city	a chance of improving its infrastructure.	
2	Well-developed social health care	gives		the good health of the population.	
3	At least 30 million US citizens of all ages	should teach		an eating disorder.	
4	The physical education	could ensure	students	not only sports activities but also a healthy diet.	
5	Parents	cook	healthy and nutritious foods	their children	every day.

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

2.3 衔接方式

❶ as well as

可在句中连接两个语法结构相同的词或短语，表示并列关系，一般不用于连接谓语动词；连接句子主语时，谓语动词的数和其前面的名词保持一致。

- According to reports, exercise can bring many benefits to our body, such as looking younger, becoming energetic **as well as** defending the body against infections.
  据报道，锻炼有很多好处，比如让人们看起来更年轻，变得有活力，以及增强抵抗感染的能力。
- Working out regularly **as well as** having a healthy diet is good for our body.
  定期锻炼和健康饮食对我们的身体有益。

❷ in conclusion

表示总结，意为“总之”。经常用于结论句或在结论段中总结观点时出现。

- **In conclusion**, I firmly believe that the advantages of holding an international sporting event outweigh its disadvantages. 总之，我坚信举办国际体育赛事的好处大于坏处。

❸ more importantly

表示递进关系，意为“更重要的是”。可以用在句首，也可以用在句中。

- More and more senior citizens in China realise the importance of keeping healthy. **More importantly**, they actively participate in various sports to promote health. 在中国，越来越多的老年人意识到保持健康的重要性。更重要的是，他们积极参加各种体育运动以促进健康。

❹ in turn

表示递进关系，意为“相应地”。常用在句中，表示某一结果也能作为原因促成另一结果。

- Exercise burns off calories and fat stored in our body, which **in turn**, slims us down.
  运动燃烧卡路里，消耗储存在我们身体里的脂肪，而这相应地又会促使我们变得苗条。

❺ nonetheless

表示转折关系，意为“尽管如此；但是”，可以与nevertheless互换，既可以用在句首，也可以用在句中。

- Promoting healthy eating habits is a long way. **Nonetheless**, some progress has been made.
  倡导健康的饮食习惯是一条很长的道路，不过，我们已经取得了一些进步。

❻ only if

引导条件状语从句，可以放在主句之前，也可以放在主句之后。放在主句之前时，主句需倒装，即将助动词提到主语之前；放在主句之后时，主句不需要倒装。

- **Only if** we do more exercise can we improve our physical fitness. 只有加强锻炼，我们才能提高身体素质。
- We can increase our ability to cope with stress **only if** we stick to a healthy diet and a workout plan.
  只有坚持健康的饮食和锻炼计划，我们才能提高应对压力的能力。

练习 **请使用本单元学过的衔接词或短语并以其正确形式填空，完成句子。**

1 Excessive concern can cause anxiety and depression, and _____, can pave the way to eating disorders in extreme cases.

2 Exercise has been shown to burn off calories and this, _____, burns off fat and keeps your weight down.

3 Doing exercise _____ having a healthy diet is very important to keep fit.

4 _____, I am in favour of the view that citizens have the right to choose their favourite sports.

5 Extreme sports are usually dangerous. _____, many people find them interesting and exciting.

3 题型讲解

3.1 运动娱乐类话题

雅思写作大作文的主体段通常包含以下几个部分：

idea	观点
explanation	解释观点
further explanation / example	进一步解释 / 举例
detail / result of the example	细节 / 举例的结果
additional information	补充信息
transition	转折
comparison	对比
conclusion	结论



以下面的题目为例，学习大作文主体段的写作方法。

Some people argue that the physical quality can achieve the greatest success in competitive sports. But other people think success is much related to mental attitude. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

❶ 题型分析

该题目为“讨论双方观点”题型，中心话题为：在竞技体育中获得成功的关键因素。

观点A：身体素质

观点B：心理素质

② 段落组织

主体段1 观点A：身体素质

idea	Undoubtedly, the key factor for athletes to be successful must be their physical ability to engage in their chosen sport.
example	Without the capacity to run long distances, no long-distance runner could hope to achieve success in this particular field.
additional information	Likewise, people specialised in ball games must have a remarkable capability with the ball so as to reach the highest levels of their profession.
conclusion	Thus, it goes without saying that the most important quality for any athlete is indeed physical quality.

观点	毫无疑问，对于运动员来说，成功的关键因素一定是他们从事所选运动的身体能力。
举例	如果没有长跑的能力，任何长跑运动员都不可能在这一特殊的运动领域取得成功。
补充信息	同样，专攻球类运动的人必须有杰出的球技，才能达到职业巅峰。
结论	因此，运动员最重要的素质确实是身体素质，这一点是不言而喻的。

主体段2 观点B：心理素质

idea	Nonetheless, the difference between brilliant athletes and those inferior to them is surely mental.
explanation	Excellent sports professionals are able to reach a higher level of athletic ability because of the good mental attributes which are born with them or nourished over time.
example	Few football players will ever reach the high standards set by players like Lionel Messi and Cristiano Ronaldo.
conclusion	They stand out purely because of their mental ability to apply themselves to improving their game and maintain the excellent level consistently.

观点	尽管如此，杰出运动员和水平低于他们的运动员之间的差别肯定是心理上的。
解释观点	杰出的职业运动员的运动能力之所以能够达到更高水平，是因为他们具备良好的心理素质，这种素质或者是与生俱来的，或者是后天培养出来的。
举例	很少有足球运动员能达到里奥·梅西和克里斯蒂亚诺·罗纳尔多所设定的高标准。
结论	他们之所以能够脱颖而出，完全是因为他们致力于提高所从事运动的水平，并一直保持着卓越的心理素质。

练习 **请根据题目，判断所给范文的两个主体段中句子的作用。**

Some people say that the best way to improve public health is by increasing the number of sports facilities. Others, however, say that this would have little effect on public health and that other measures need to be taken. Discuss both views and give your own opinion.

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

主体段1 增加运动设施

When it comes to improving the overall health of the population, one of the most obvious ideas is to provide wider access to sports facilities.	1 _____
Governments need to channel more funds to develop sports facilities for the public.	2 _____
Building them in every local park makes every citizen have a chance to use them.	3 _____
In addition, governments could set up a series of sporting events with facilities to promote national fitness.	4 _____
This would ensure that these facilities are fully used.	
Apparently, governments could play an important role in promoting public health.	5 _____
	6 _____

主体段2 其他措施

However, there is another more obvious argument about how to improve public health: investment in public health care.	7 _____
Certainly, if there is an improved standard of a country's hospitals, it would be very convenient for people to take better care of themselves.	8 _____
With sufficient devotion from governments, people will not hesitate to make an appointment with a doctor as soon as they fall ill.	9 _____
The latest medical technology and well-trained medical professionals can ensure that diseases can be diagnosed earlier and treated more carefully.	10 _____
Therefore, establishing a well-functioning public health care system will be a great way to improve the overall health of the national citizens.	11 _____

3.2 表格 1

雅思写作考试中的表格大致可分为以下两类：

- 有时间跨度的

可以描述这段时间内发生的变化，与描述曲线图相似；有时也可以分项目描述。

- 没有时间跨度的

可以分项目比较相似性和不同点、最大值和最小值，以及项目之间的差距等。

以下面的题目为例，学习根据时间描述表格。

> ***The table below shows sales made by a coffee shop in an office building on a typical weekday.***
>
> Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

	Coffee	Tea	Pastries	Sandwiches
7.30 am–10.30 am	265	110	275	50
10.30 am–2.30 pm	185	50	95	200
2.30 pm–5.30 pm	145	35	150	40
5.30 pm–8.30 pm	200	75	80	110

开头段

> The table gives information about sales of all types of products in a coffee shop on a normal day. Overall, coffee and pastries are more popular than tea and sandwiches. And, these two products have the highest sales figure in the early morning.

这张表给出了咖啡店在正常一天中所有类型产品的销售情况。总体来说，咖啡和糕点比茶和三明治更受欢迎。而且，这两种产品在清晨的销售量是最高的。

主体段1

> The sales of pastries are similar to that of coffee between 7.30 am to 10.30 am, sitting at 275 and 265 respectively. On the other hand, sandwiches are most consumed with 200 from 10.30 am to 2.30 pm, while tea is least consumed with only 50. In addition, the sales of coffee and pastries are 185 and 95 respectively.

在上午7:30到10:30之间糕点与咖啡的销售情况相似，分别为275份和265份。另一方面，从上午10:30到下午2:30，三明治的销售量最多，为200份，而茶的销售量最少，只有50份。此外，咖啡和糕点的销售量分别为185份和95份。

主体段2

> From 2.30 pm to 5.30 pm, sales of coffee and pastries are similar, amounting to 145 and 150 respectively. In contrast, tea is least sold with 35. Additionally, the sales of coffee are the highest between 5.30 pm and 8.30 pm with 200. On the contrary, tea is least consumed with only 75.

下午2:30到5:30，咖啡和糕点的销售量相近，分别为145份和150份。相比之下，茶的销售量最低，仅为35份。另外，咖啡的销售量在晚上5:30到8:30之间最高，达到200份。相反，茶的销售量最少，仅为75份。

练习 **请根据以上题目，从方框中选择正确的单词或短语补全下列范文的主体段。**

tea	drinking products	sandwiches	pastries	coffee	snacks

主体段1

As for 1 _____, it is clear that coffee is preferable to tea at all time periods listed in the table. For instance, in the earliest time of a day, 2 _____ reaches the highest number with 265 and stays in the first position in the evening when the total sales are exactly 200. However, 3 _____ is behind coffee apparently in drinking, and its sales are the lowest of all types of products in a day.

主体段2

In terms of 4 _____, pastries enjoy the largest number, standing at 275, compared to other products from 7.30 am to 10.30 am. Likewise, the sales of 5 _____ are almost four times higher than that of sandwiches between 2.30 pm and 5.30 pm. As for other two time periods, 6 _____ apparently have better performance.

4 课后练习

4.1 请根据中文提示，将所给英文表达重新排序，组成一个语义完整的句子。

1 对于一些人来说，极限冒险是缓解日常工作和生活压力的有效方法。

to relieve the stress / going for extreme adventures / for some people / in daily work and life / is an effective way

_____

2 由不良饮食和缺乏锻炼造成的肥胖症在许多国家已成为人们日益关注的问题。

a growing concern / obesity / in many countries / poor diet / has become / caused by / and lack of exercise

_____

3 大多数人每天的大部分工作时间都坐在屏幕前，几乎没有时间锻炼。

the majority / for exercise / of people / most of / little time / sitting / a screen / their working hours / in front of / with / spend

_____

4 如果父母不想对孩子的饮食行为产生不良影响，他们就必须改变自己的习惯。

parents must / don't want / on their children's / to have / dietary behaviour / a negative impact / if they / alter their habits

_____

5 对于孩子们来说，学校的体育课和更为健康的食谱是一个切实可行的减肥方案。

the physical education / with regard to / children / a practical solution / as well as / is / healthier menus / to losing weight / at school

_____

6 竞技体育的根本目的是为运动员提供一个可以相互竞争并证明自己体育实力的平台。
provide athletes / the fundamental purpose / their sporting prowess / is to / with a platform / of competitive sports / and prove / to compete with each other

---

4.2 请根据题目，从方框中选择正确的表述补全下列范文的主体段。

saw a similar figure　　a difference　　the same　　compared to　　slightly lower

The table below shows the percentage of school-aged boys in two different age groups who participated in five different sports in the UK in 2015.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

The percentage of school-aged boys in two different age groups who participated in five different sports in the UK in 2015

Sports	Boys aged 6–11	Boys aged 12–16
Soccer	87	78
Basketball	35	25
Cricket	45	34
Rugby	23	21
Swimming	19	19

开头段

The table gives information about the percentage of schoolboys in two separate age groups who took part in five different types of sports in the UK in 2015.

Overall, the percentage of boys aged between 6 and 11 was always higher than that of the older group, with the notable exception of swimming.

主体段1 不同点

Exactly 87% of boys from the 6–11 age group played soccer, while the percentage of boys between 12 and 16 was 1 _____, which stood at 78%. Only 25% of the older age group played basketball, 2 _____ 35% of the younger boys. There is 3 _____ of 11% in the percentage of the two age groups taking part in cricket, 45% for the younger group and 34% for the older group.

主体段2 相似性

Meanwhile, the percentage of the two surveyed age groups in the UK who liked swimming was exactly 4 _____, standing at 19%. However, the UK 5 _____ for schoolboys in the two groups who played rugby in 2015, accounting for 23% and 21% respectively.

Unit 4 Media and Advertising

Listening

1 词汇基础

1.1 请将方框中的单词按照媒体类型分类。

television	radio	newspaper	blog	Internet
magazine	film	e-mail	smartphone	podcast

Traditional media	New media

1.2 请从方框中选择正确的单词并以其正确形式填空，完成句子。

promote	capture	interrupt	forecast	post	grab

1 The event was _____ by street cameras.

2 Temperatures are _____ to reach 35°C tomorrow.

3 Mark is inviting celebrities to _____ their company's products.

4 We will _____ the programme to bring you an urgent news.

5 The new act of medical system has _____ the headlines today.

6 I need to _____ the latest news on my WeChat account immediately.

1.3 请听一段对话，将下列选项分类（有多余选项未在对话中出现）。

Pros and Cons of Advertising

Pros	Cons

A It provides a vision of ideal lives.

B None would buy it because of the advertising.

C Products need to look attractive.

D Young people have been targeted by alcohol companies.

E Buying chocolates doesn't keep our love life on track.

F Many advertisements make false promises.

G The ads are always aiming for money.

H Some advertisements are exaggerated.

I It's our decisions that matter.

J The advertisement aims to protect the environment.

K Successful advertising can help companies exceed the competitors.

场景词汇

advertisement /əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt/ *n.* 广告

broadcast /'brɔ:dkɑ:st/ *n.* 广播节目 *v.* 广播

forecast /'fɔ:kɑ:st/ *n.* / *v.* 预报

flavour /'fleɪvə(r)/ *n.* 味道

vision /'vɪʒn/ *n.* 视野；视力

attractive /ə'træktɪv/ *adj.* 有吸引力的

waterproof /'wɔ:təpru:f/ *adj.* 防水的

exhausted /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/ *adj.* 耗尽的；疲惫不堪的

ideal /aɪ'di:əl/ *adj.* 理想的

promote /prə'məʊt/ *v.* 推销

promise /'prɒmɪs/ *n.* / *v.* 承诺

interrupt /ˌɪntə'rʌpt/ *v.* 打断

distract /dɪ'strækt/ *v.* 分散（注意力）

preserve /prɪ'zɜ:v/ *v.* 保存

agency /'eɪdʒənsi/ *n.* 中介

mainstream /'meɪnstri:m/ *n.* 主流 *adj.* 主流的

blog /blɒg/ *n.* 博客 *v.* 写博客

platform /'plætfɔ:m/ *n.* 平台

issue /'ɪʃu:/ *n.* 问题 *v.* 发行

closure /'kləʊʒə(r)/ *n.* 终止；关闭

volunteer /ˌvɒlən'tɪə(r)/ *n.* 志愿者

step /step/ *n.* 脚步 *v.* 迈步

ambition /æm'bɪʃn/ *n.* 野心

quote /kwəʊt/ *v.* 引用；报价

apart from 除了……

in case 以防

free of charge 免费

aim for 以……为目标

Valentine's Day 情人节

2 能力培养

2.1 大小写规范

❶ 如果答案是数字和字母的组合，则字母需要大写。雅思听力考试中常见的数字与字母组合的情况包括：

- flight number
- driving licence number
- membership number
- medical card number
- student number
- passport number
- postcode

> **Tips**
>
> 英国的邮编一般为数字和字母的组合，最少5位，最多7位。另外，0在邮编中读/'zɪərəʊ/，不会像在电话号码或卡号中，可能读成/əʊ/。

❷ 句子开头的第一个单词必须首字母大写，如：Do you like advertising?

❸ 人名需要首字母大写，包括first name，middle name 和last name。如：Jane William Smith。

❹ 表示地名、语言、国籍、国家等词语的首字母要大写，如：London，English，British，United Kingdom。

❺ 表示编号、等级等词语的首字母要大写，如：No. One，Grade Two。

❻ 表示月份、星期、节日等词语的首字母要大写，如：July，Friday，Spring Festival。

❼ 表示称呼、职务或亲属关系的名词后接人名时，首字母要大写，如：Chairman Mao，Doctor Sam，Uncle Tom。

❽ 表示独一无二的事物的名词，首字母要大写，如：Mars。

❾ 人称代词 I 在任何情况下都要大写，如：Neither my friend nor I like TV commercials.

❿ 文章的标题、报刊名、歌名、书名等作品名，条约、文献、法案等都需要大写首字母，但虚词一般不大写，如：*Reader's Digest*，*Game of Thrones*。

⓫ 表示机构、组织、公司、学校等词语的首字母要大写，如：World Health Organisation，Cambridge University。

⓬ 大多数缩略词都要大写，如：NASA，GDP。

⓭ 放在引号里的句子，第一个单词的首字母也要大写，如：She said，'Nowadays, it's better to post ads on websites.'

2.2 巩固练习

练习1 请将正确答案的选项填写在空白处。

Information	
Name	1 _____
Address	2 _____
Postcode	3 _____
4 _____	Speaks 5 _____

(*to be continued*)

(*continued*)

Information	
Company Applied	6 _____
Experience	7 _____
Date of Interview	8 _____
Interviewer	9 _____
Learn from	10 _____

1 **A** liu xinfang **B** liu XinFang **C** Liu Xinfang

2 **A** 14 bromley road **B** 14 Bromley Road **C** 14 bromley Road

3 **A** 123 992 **B** SWP O19 **C** ES3 7RO

4 **A** Language Skills **B** Language skills **C** language skills

5 **A** English and Chinese **B** english and chinese **C** English and chinese

6 **A** Ibm **B** ibm **C** IBM

7 **A** Salesman **B** salesman **C** Sales Man

8 **A** 2019 August 2 **B** 2nd august 2019 **C** 2 August 2019

9 **A** mr Michael **B** Mr Michael **C** Mr michael

10 **A** *The Guardian* **B** *the Guardian* **C** *the guardian*

练习2 请指出下列对话中的大小写错误，并改正。

Presenter: Well, this is a 'colourful' way to start today's episode of *the daily show*. What are you going to talk about this time?

Emma: Thanks, Adrian. Yes, well, today, i'd think about two ways in which colour plays a very important part in our life. those things are food and fashion. So, let's begin by looking at food and more specifically, food colouring. Some people also call it 'artificial colour'. In 1938 the federal food, drug, and cosmetic act was passed to give food colouring additives numbers. For example, amaranth was renamed FD&C Red no. two...

练习3 请听一段录音，把缺少的单词填写到空白处，注意大小写规范。

Today, 1 _____ buying food always wants to make sure it's the right colour. So, 2 _____, when 3 _____ purchase tinned or canned vegetables, such as carrots, it's very likely that the carrots inside the can have been altered with colouring chemicals. Carrots are naturally orange, but that doesn't mean they are orange all over or that all carrots are the same shade of orange. 4 _____ that means, in order to please the consumers, a natural colouring can be added to give the carrots a more acceptable colour. A paper on the Wise Geek 5 _____ pointed out, '6 _____ have been adding colours to their food for thousands of years. Early food colourings were commonly made from crushed seeds.'



3 题型讲解

3.1 高频场景

媒体广告类场景在雅思听力考试中一般以播放电台节目的形式出现，也会出现在谈及市场和宣传广告的商业案例中。该场景多出现在Part 3和Part 4中，题型以选择题和填空题为主，有一定难度。该场景下的高频考点包括：

- 电台播报
- 市场分析
- 广告案例
- 宣传形式

3.2 题型演练

练习1 **请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。**

Choose the correct letter, ***A****,* ***B*** or ***C****.*

1 What is the topic of the lecture?

A professional journalism　　B amateur journalists　　C how to report news

2 Which way of reporting is popular these days?

A posting news by mobile phones　　B writing articles on the newspaper　　C news agency's reports

3 Which kind of stories cannot be published?

A stories avoided by mainstream media　　B personal views　　C none

4 Which kind of news will you see on personal blogs?

A national news　　B stories on the newspaper　　C transport of hometown

练习2 **请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。**

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

1 What's the official distance of a marathon?

A about 42 kilometres　　B about 26 kilometres　　C about 37 kilometres

2 What's the most convenient way of transport during the event?

A driving private cars　　B riding bicycles　　C walking

3 What suggestion did the speaker give?

A wear comfortable clothes　　B check the weather forecast ahead

C give out bottles of water to runners or volunteers

4 Where can you stand in the city centre?

A somewhere you can see the volunteers clearly

B somewhere you can see the runners clearly

C out of the road

5 What should you do during the event?

A wait at the finish line　　B cheer loudly　　C support your friends with your hands up

4 课后练习

4.1 请听一段对话，把缺少的单词填写到空白处，注意大小写规范。

Paul: Welcome to our 1 _____. Today I'd like to introduce a few brave climbers who come from the east coast of 2 _____. Let's welcome them!

Climber 1: Thanks, 3 _____. My main ambition was to push myself to keep on going. 4 _____ from accomplishing the physical challenge, we all knew there was something far more important at stake. Like someone said, '5 _____ is impossible.'

Paul: The expedition started in late 6 _____ and ended over the weekend.

4.2 请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。

Complete the table below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for each answer.*

Name	1 _____
Hometown	2 _____
Work Experience	Worked at 3 _____
Birthday	4 _____
Age	5 _____
6 _____	A Chinese song

4.3 请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

1 How can writers attract readers online?

A by using Internet language

B by summarising the key points

C by writing simple sentences

2 What structure does the speaker advise?

A important facts at the top

B important details at the bottom

C less important details in the middle

3 What's the function of quotation?

A to make articles more believable　B to support writer's opinion　C to interest readers

4 What doesn't the writer need to check when finishing the first draft?

A people's names　B a conclusion　C grammar

5 Which of the following should be put at the top of an article?

A a photograph　B a subtitle　C a headline

4.4 请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

1 What can you expect to see on the top of a blog?

A the blog's introduction　B the latest diary　C earliest posts

2 What do most bloggers like to post?

A local arts　B political issues　C personal journals

3 What cannot readers do through blogs?

A delete the blogger's posts　B meet new friends　C leave messages

4 When did the word 'blog' appear?

A in 1994　B after many 'blogs' appeared　C when a man broke a word

5 How often should a blog update?

A every day　B when there is news　C on a regular basis

Reading

1 词汇基础

1.1 请将下列与传媒相关的单词与其释义相匹配。

1 publicity
2 brand
3 privacy
4 promotion
5 consensus

A the state of being free from the attention of the public
B an opinion that all members of a group agree with
C activities done in order to increase the sales of a product or service; a set of advertisements for a particular product or service
D a type of product made by a particular company
E the attention that is given to sb / sth by newspapers, television, etc

1.2 请从方框中选择正确的单词或短语并以其正确形式填空，完成句子。

sponsor	grant	win out	release	stimulate

1 Retail stores are dying for something new to _____ sales.
2 The bank finally _____ a loan to me so that I could start my new business.
3 Major sports events are usually _____ by automakers.
4 Often presentation _____ over content.
5 Last Tuesday, the company distributed an ad to the public implying that they would _____ a series of new products soon.

1.3 请阅读文章，将方框中关于有效电视广告的要求与相应的举措相匹配。

Effective TV Advertisements

Peter Drucker was regarded as 'father of modern management' who knew things about corporate missteps. He has made some memorable observations about marketing and advertising, such as, 'The aim of marketing is to know and understand the customer so well the product or service fits him and sells itself'.

Does Drucker mean the process of advertisement creation is easy? Absolutely not. Like good actors, good advertising looks effortless. Effective TV advertisements also:

Form an Emotional Connection with Viewers. Among the three traditional mediums of newspapers, radio and TV, TV is the most effective way to create an emotional connection because it combines the power of words and images with sound and action. The Nielsen

Corporation, a global marketing research company, observes that two emotions are especially effective at triggering such an connection: humour and empathy.

Tell a Story. The ad can be a story in a series of commercials. Experienced marketers have learned that consumers respond well to stories because 'success stories' about products are just like stories about consumers themselves. Such stories help form an emotional connection with a company, which in turn can instil customer loyalty. Clear, simple and upbeat stories seem to register best with consumers.

Be Memorable. We all have our favourite ad. It stands out for many reasons: a particular message, a soundtrack or a recognisable personality. The best TV ads are the ones that get people talking and sharing them on social media, which can have a massive and positive impact on product sales.

Celebrate a Brand. This can be designed in the form of showcasing a corporate logo or mascot. The earlier the showcase starts, the more effective the ad will be. TV viewers are easily distracted and often jump from channel to channel, so an ad needs to draw their attention immediately. With repetition, these images become familiar — and familiarity breeds recognition that gets attention.

A Form an Emotional Connection with Viewers.

B Tell a Story.

C Be Memorable.

D Celebrate a Brand.

1 An ad uses a cute cartoon character to symbolise the brand's image that the audience can relate to the product or the company.

2 A company promotes its products by establishing a humorous setting so that the audience would laugh whenever they watch the ad.

3 A simple and catchy phrase is repeated in the ad.

4 An ad introduces a series of success stories that can keep the audience.

1.4 请用横线画出文章中的生词和短语，查阅词典确认含义，并写在下面的横线上。

主题词汇

censorship /'sensəʃɪp/ *n.* 审查（制度），检查（体制）

consensus /kən'sensəs/ *n.* 一致看法，共识

statement /'steɪtmənt/ *n.*（尤指公开或正式的）陈述，声明

anonymity /ˌænə'nɪməti/ *n.* 匿名

privacy /'prɪvəsi/ *n.* 隐私

interactive /ˌɪntər'æktɪv/ *adj.*（人与计算机程序、电视系统等）交互的，互动的

neutral /'nju:trəl/ *adj.* 中立的；中性的

alluring /ə'lʊərɪŋ/ *adj.* 诱人的，吸引人的

prejudice /'predʒudɪs/ *n.* 偏见

retail /'ri:teɪl/ *n. / v.* 零售

trademark /'treɪdma:k/ *n.* 商标

propaganda /ˌprɒpə'gændə/ *n.*（政府或政党为了影响民意而进行的）宣传

publicity /pʌb'lɪsəti/ *n.* 宣传，推广

promotion /prə'məʊʃn/ *n.* 推销，促销

immerse /ɪ'mɜ:s/ *v.* 专注于……

big data 大数据

communication theory 传播理论

digital marketing 数字化营销

product placement 广告植入

selling point 卖点

2 能力培养

辨别文章的主要观点

在第三单元中，我们已经了解到议论文具有强烈的主观性，主要目的是辨明某个道理或者观点，会涉及事实信息之外的不同观点的表达与分析。

事实信息（facts）是客观存在的事物或道理，而观点（opinions）则是文章的作者或其他主体对某事物持有的态度或看法，带有主观性。在议论文中，文章的主要观点会有充分的事实信息支持，有时还会出现多方观点的辨析。因此，辨别文章的主要观点对理解文章非常重要。

通常，作者会直接用引号表示某方的观点，或者用一些表达观点的单词或短语。常见的单词有：say，suggest，advise，need (to)，think，observe，quote，claim，idea，argue，conclude，insist，assume，present，highlight，summarise，maintain等；常见的短语有：in the view of，based on，according to，have to，be supposed to，had better等。而当表达观点的句子中出现statistics，evidence，survey，report，study等名词时，作者表达观点的方式更客观、更有说服力。

需要注意的是，除单词和短语外，陈述句和祈使句也能直接表达作者的主要观点。

任务1 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

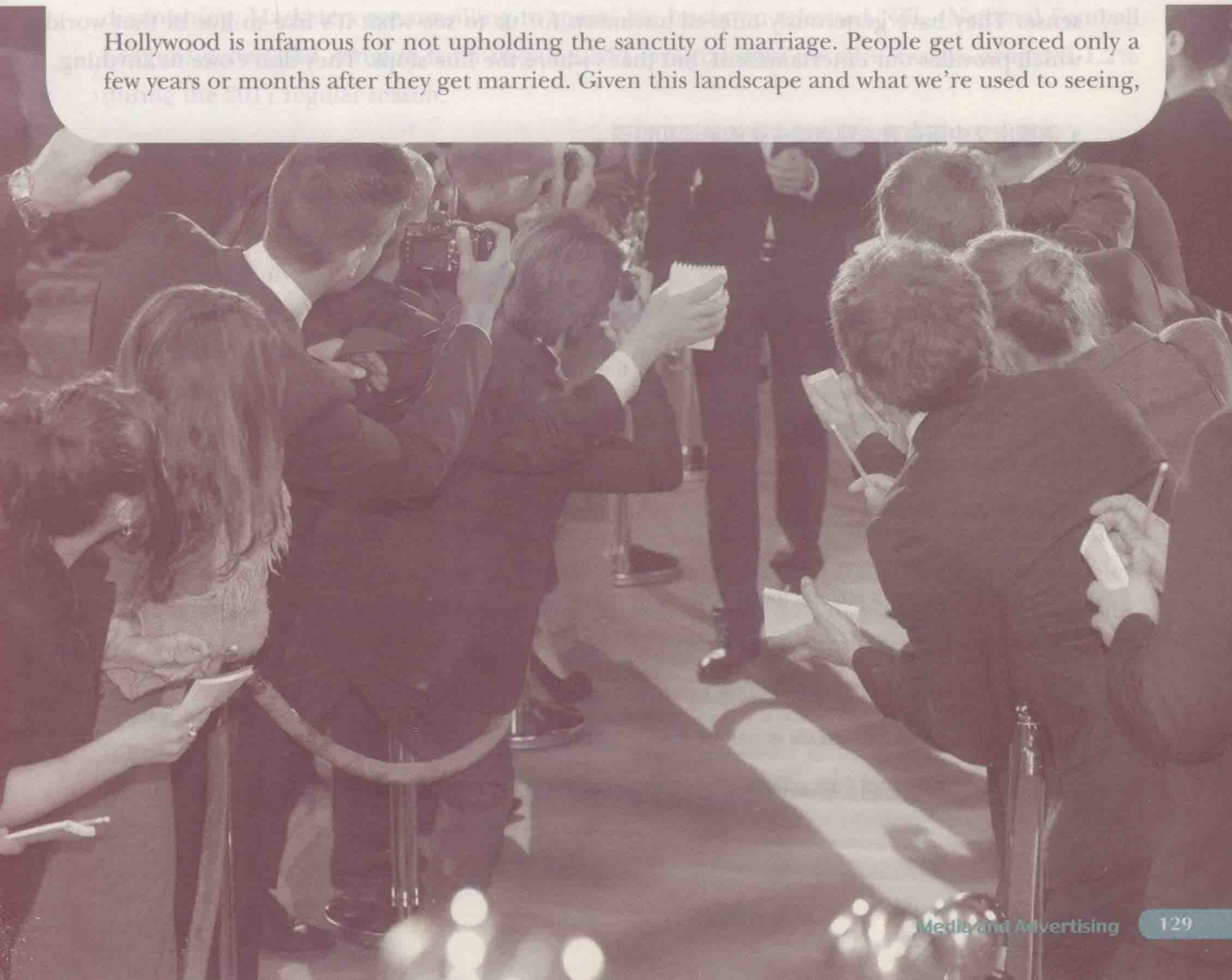
Are Celebrities Entitled to Privacy?

When Channing Tatum and Jenna Dewan-Tatum finally announced their decision of getting divorced, some fans were heartbroken and most were just plain shocked. This was a couple that people admired and their love was a love that people aspired to.

'If they cannot make it, there is no chance for us.' is a quote I've seen on multiple social media platforms shortly after the release of the divorce news. It sounds ridiculous and it is unfair for the divorced couple. For me, it's hard to imagine trying to be in a relationship and having the weight of public pressure and opinion as a constant third party. It would be frustrating to have the world see you as a 'perfect' spouse when in reality no relationship is perfect.

To be frank, I think it's pretty harmful to have such pressure to be perfect, because when reality sets in and the relationship doesn't live up to the idealised version, it might make you question it. I hope that's not what happened to Channing and Jenna. Relationships take work, and if there's a child involved, it takes even more work to balance the obligations of being a spouse and a parent.

Hollywood is infamous for not upholding the sanctity of marriage. People get divorced only a few years or months after they get married. Given this landscape and what we're used to seeing,



we tend to idolise the relationships and marriages that do last.

We place couples like Emily Blunt and John Krasinski, Blake Lively and Ryan Reynolds, and Chrissy Teigen and John Legend, on a higher plain because we regard their marriages as examples of great relationship success. This is our mistake. Hollywood plays by its own rules, but celebrity couples face the same trials and tribulations as almost every other couple: petty arguments, finding it hard to spend time together, etc.

We should not put ourselves in a position to judge others' marriage because it is not fair for them. When most people first learned about Channing and Jenna's break-up, they felt depressed because the couple had always given an impression that they were happy together, and because their marriage had endured for almost a decade. 'So why can't they make it work?' might be their question, but that is not a good question we are supposed to ask.

We are just passers-by, seeing a brief statement released by the former couple. We do not know what the actual situation of their marriage is, nor do we have any right to pass judgement on them because we don't know them.

Some will argue that nothing comes without a price. Celebrities choose all the fame and publicity that comes towards them, so they don't deserve a private life. But that doesn't make sense. They have generously offered a window for us to see what it's like to live in that world which provides our entertainment, but that's where the line stops. They don't owe us anything.

1 请圈出文中所有表达观点或主张的单词和短语。

2 请将下列观点与对应的人物相匹配。

A the author

B others

1) If they (Channing and Jenna) cannot make it, there is no chance for us.

2) The intense pressure to be perfect surely has a negative impact on the relationship.

3) We should not put ourselves in a position to judge others' marriage because it is not fair for them.

4) Celebrities choose all the fame and publicity that comes towards them, so they don't deserve a private life.

3 What is the author's attitude towards celebrity privacy?

A Celebrities should expose their private life to the public.

B Due to their reputations and fame, celebrities should allow their privacy to be revealed.

C Displaying their private life is part of their work requirements, so they don't enjoy privacy.

D We should respect their private life because they have the same right to privacy as we do.

任务2 请阅读文章，判断文后所列观点或事实与作者的观点是否相符，相符请画√，不符请画×。

Digital vs TV Advertising: Making Your Advertising Dollars Count

Digital marketing overtook television advertising for the first time in 2016. As brands have continued to invest money in digital formats, it is expected that TV ad expenditure will make up less than a third of all marketing budgets in 2021 while digital marketing will account for over half of ad budgets. The companies are changing the channel because in the past three years, people, especially those millennial customers, spent less and less time in watching TV.

Companies now spend less on TV advertising than ever before. Once the most important means of reaching customers, TV is now replaced by digital media as more and more people consume digital formats. According to Lucas Shaw of Bloomberg, 'Television advertising sales in the US fell 7.8% to $61.8 billion in 2017, the steepest drop outside of a recession in at least 20 years, while sales at cable networks slumped for the first time in almost a decade.'

Even so, there are still exceptions. Large sport and entertainment events and shows like *Game of Thrones* attract huge viewing figures. However, the number of popular TV formats is diminishing. Marketers are unwilling to spend big bucks on televised NFL (National Football League) games. Ad revenue from in-game NFL programmes on all networks dropped 1.2% during the 2017 regular season.

If video killed the radio star, could digital formats kill off TV for good? This is entirely possible, given that 61% of young adults in the United States consume their favourite TV shows through streaming platforms such as Netflix and HBO Go. Among them, only 5% of millennial customers mainly watch TV through a digital antenna, indicating a major shift in viewing habits over the last decade or so. In today's United States, the major TV networks like Fox and NBC are still dominant in terms of shaping viewing habits, but more and more young people are going elsewhere. The trend stretches beyond millennial customers, with almost 40% of 30–49-year-olds and nearly 10% of 50–64-year-olds watching TV through online streaming platforms.

Marketers can benefit from changing TV tastes. Unlike TV ads, which are unaccountable, brands personalise digital ads to different customer segments. Data-driven marketing lets companies tailor ads based on a customer's interests, preferences or buying habits. As a result, the creative and customised ads provide marketers with a return on their investment.

Digital marketing is now going through a golden age, so it's a good idea to strike while the iron is hot. Partnering with an ad platform gives you the best chance of success. It's a team effort, in which everyone has a role to play. Together, you can reach customers at every single stage of the sales cycle using search, video and display ads.

According to one study, as TV ads expenditure continues to drop, marketers spent 50% more on digital ads in 2017 than they did in 2016. Perhaps it won't be long before marketers abandon TV advertising altogether.

1 As people, especially millennial customers, reduce their TV viewing time over the past three years, advertising companies have to develop new ways to reach younger audiences. _____

2 Television advertising sales in the US fell 7.8% to $61.8 billion in 2017, the steepest drop outside of a recession in at least 20 years, while sales at cable networks slumped for the first time in almost a decade. _____

3 Major sporting and entertainment events and shows like *Game of Thrones*, attract fewer and fewer viewers. _____

4 Evidence suggests marketing firms can take advantage of shifts in TV tastes. _____

3 题型讲解

判断题（TRUE / FALSE / NOT GIVEN）

判断题是雅思阅读考试的标志性题型之一，考查的是考生对于细节信息的判断和理解能力。其考查形式是题目给出一些表述，这些表述通常并非原文原句，考生需要判断题目中的表述是否与文章内容相符。如果题目表述与文章内容相符，则填写TRUE；如果题目表述与文章内容不相符，则填写FALSE；如果题目表述在文章中未提到，则填写NOT GIVEN。考生需要根据题目的关键词定位到原文寻找答案。

判断题通常为正序出题，即题目顺序按照文章中信息的顺序呈现，所以依照文章顺序即可顺利完成所有题目，无须反复阅读文章寻找答案。

Tips

答题时需要留意题目要求，判断题有TRUE / FALSE / NOT GIVEN和YES / NO / NOT GIVEN两种答案形式，不要填写错误。

任务1 请阅读文章“How Does Spam Work?”的前半部分，根据要求完成题目。

How Does Spam Work?

Spam is familiar to most of us as we often receive unwanted correspondence sent by commercial ventures that ends up in our e-mail's junk folder. The term 'spam' also refers to a type of inexpensive canned meat made mainly of pork which is popular in Europe. What we are talking about here is the first one.

Most people complain that spam is an unwanted intrusion into their mailbox. Internet Service Providers (ISPs) treat spam as a financial drain and a hindrance to Internet speed as it slows bandwidth. Spam is also related to business fraud, chain letters and offensive messages.

However, this does not mean that all bulk e-mails can be dismissed as spam. Some types of bulk e-mails are sent with the permission of the recipients when they visit a website — for example, when buying something — and afterwards allow the site to send them updates via e-mail. These 'opt-in' e-mails offer the user benefits, such as free information or discounts on certain goods. Spam e-mails are the kind sent without the user's permission. As most businesses understand that most people hate spam clogging up their inbox, they tend to avoid sending it.

...

1 请在文中圈出方框中的关键词语。

term	Internet Service Providers	bulk e-mails	'opt-in' e-mails

2 请根据所圈的关键词语定位原文信息，判断下列句子是否与之相符。相符请写TRUE，不符请写FALSE，未提到请写NOT GIVEN。

1) The origin of the term 'spam' is related to a popular meat product in Europe. _____

2) Internet Service Providers regard spam as a neutral tool depending on different recipients. _____

3) Bulk e-mails represent a more effective way of advertisement than traditional advertising. _____

4) 'Opt-in' e-mails are also unwanted junk e-mails. _____

任务2 请阅读文章"How Does Spam Work?"的后半部分，根据要求完成题目。

...

How Spam Works

Generally, spam is sent indirectly through a 'spammer': a company that profits from sending unsolicited e-mails. Advertising firms enter into agreement with spammers to generate e-mail advertisements that are then mass distributed across the Internet at a far lower cost than postal bulk mailings. Firms can spam 10,000 e-mail accounts for less than $100, which is up to 10 times cheaper than postal mailing.

How do spammers find you? Sometimes they might buy addresses or they obtain them by using software programmes known as 'harvesters' that pluck names from websites, newsgroups, or other services in which users identify themselves by e-mail addresses.

To protect against 'harvesters' of e-mail addresses, some websites use software that 'poisons' the 'harvester'. They may generate false e-mail addresses or direct the 'harvester' to a non-existent site. The use of 'poisoners', filters and blocking software can be expensive and creates a worse 'cat and mouse game' as spammers attempt to avoid each new round of anti-spam software dishonestly.

The Problem with Spamming

Defenders of spam believe it is not different from other types of advertising e-mails and can be

easily deleted. It is true to some extent. However, receiving spam is actually more like receiving a junk fax or a sales call on a mobile phone because the cost of distributing the advertisement is paid by the recipient (or the recipient's ISP), not the sender. It is estimated that US businesses spend more than $20 billion a year dealing with spam.

Every ISP pays for the right to operate on the Internet by purchasing bandwidth. As the spam goes through an ISP, the bandwidth slows and the user's online access will be restricted. To counter this, the ISPs have to pay for filtering software (which can also slow access) or pay to increase the amount of bandwidth. In both cases, the expense is often passed along to subscribers.

'How come you didn't write back?' If you receive an e-mail like this from a stranger, don't be surprised. It is spam. You might have noticed that much of the spam you receive involves deceptive practices. And you've no doubt noticed that a lot of the spam that comes your way is attempting to continue some sort of scam-pyramid plans, false stock offerings, pirated software and quack health remedies.

If you are asked to respond to the spammer, never do that. Because your responding to a 'remove me' option is telling the sender that your e-mail account is active. This might result in your receiving even more spam.

1 请在文中用横线画出与方框中的表述相对应的信息。

A the term to describe who sends the spam

B the cost of advertising through the spam

C the way 'poisoners' work

D the high expense US companies pay for handling spam

E one way that spam uses to trick people

2 Do the following statements agree with the claims of the writer in the passage?

Write

TRUE *if the statement agrees with the information*
FALSE *if the statement contradicts the information*
NOT GIVEN *if there is no information on this*

1) Spammers are in fact advertising firms who intend to promote their products.

2) Postal mailing is far more expensive than advertising through spam.

3) Nowadays, spam has ways to compete with 'poisoners'.

4) US companies spent more than $20 billion annually in fighting against spam.

5) Titles about getting rich are the most effective method to trick people into opening spam.

4 课后练习

请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

A Brief History of Political Advertising in the US

Political advertising is a huge industry in the US and is particularly prominent during presidential elections. Political ads invade people's homes through television, radio and the Internet, as well as being almost everywhere on billboards across the country. The amount of money spent on political advertising increases annually, with an estimated $10 billion spent in the 2016 election year.

The Impact of Television

It was TV that changed the way politicians reached their audience. In the past, vote-seeking candidates needed to get out and meet the voters, holding town-hall debates and shaking hands with voters on the streets.

During the 1948 presidential election, Harry S. Truman travelled more than 30,000 miles across the US, meeting over half a million voters. In those days, this was considered remarkable, but nowadays it would seem surprising and hard to believe. No candidate would take that effort when TV advertising can do a far more effective job.

Dwight D. Eisenhower was the first politician to really take advantage of TV, creating more than three dozen 20-second television spots. They were filmed in one day at Radio City Music Hall, where visitors asked questions that were edited into separate shots of Eisenhower answering them as though the viewers were asking him directly. These questions were split into ads, and the campaign 'Eisenhower Answers America' ran. The campaign was credited with helping Eisenhower win the election.

TV Debates

Richard Nixon's television addresses during his presidential campaign, covering the Cold War and government corruption, were very powerful. However, John F. Kennedy, Nixon's opponent, was a man who was born to be on camera and created more than 200 television ads in his run for the White House.

Their televised debate is regarded as a turning point in American political campaigning. While Kennedy was at ease on camera, looking comfortable and confident, Nixon was nervous and looked troubled. Ironically, when the debates were televised, people thought Kennedy was the clear winner, while those listening to the radio thought the opposite.

The Rise of Negative TV Campaigning

Lyndon B. Johnson ran one of the most controversial ads in political advertising history. Entitled 'The Daisy Girl', it showed a young girl playing 'he loves me, he loves me not' and when she plucked the last petal, a voice counted down to a nuclear explosion. The tagline 'because the stakes are too high for you to stay at home' played a decisive role in Johnson's victory over his opponent Barry Goldwater. This was the first example of 'negative campaigning', where the candidate focuses on the flaws of the opponent rather than offering a positive message of his own.

Political Advertising Reaches New Media

Bill Clinton was the first presidential candidate to effectively use more of the non-traditional forms of a political ad. Apart from TV spots, radio ads and billboards, he spread his reach much wider. He would appear on daytime TV talk shows and find his way onto channels like MTV, engaging with younger voters in a way his opponent, George H.W. Bush, failed to do.

When it comes to modern political advertising, Barack Obama changed the game. He used traditional media outlets and ran some negative spots, but his campaign was based on a positive message — hope. And, he used the Internet and guerrilla advertising successfully. Obama's use of modern methods, plus his youth and charm, upstaged his much older, traditional Republican opponent, John McCain.

Do the following statements agree with the information given in the passage?

Write

TRUE *if the statement agrees with the information*

FALSE *if the statement contradicts the information*

NOT GIVEN *if there is no information on this*

1 The expenses of political advertising kept rising up every year in the US.

2 Before the emergence of TV, candidates needed to get in touch with the voters face to face.

3 Harry S. Truman was the first candidate who travelled over 30,000 miles across the US for the campaign.

4 Dwight D. Eisenhower was the first one to use TV commercial ad for the presidential campaign.

5 Richard Nixon appeared more confident and competent than John F. Kennedy in front of the camera.

6 Negative campaigning is a method of campaigning by revealing the dark side of the society, then offering promising solutions to these problems.

7 Bill Clinton looked more natural than his opponent George H.W. Bush on TV.

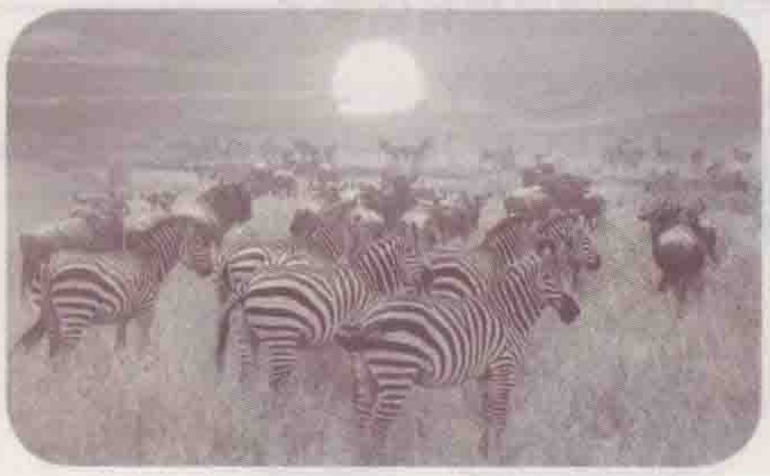
8 Barack Obama exceeded John McCain through traditional campaigning techniques.

Speaking

1 词汇基础

1.1 请从方框中选择正确的单词或短语填写到相应的图片下方。

soap opera　　talk show　　documentary　　international news



1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____

1.2 请将下列职业与其对应的职责相匹配。

1 journalist	A	making amusing drawings for the newspaper or magazine
2 photographer	B	writing opinions about books, movies, plays, etc
3 critic	C	collecting news and writing about it for newspapers, magazines, etc
4 cartoonist	D	taking pictures as a job
5 publisher	E	managing and printing newspapers, books, etc and making them available to the public

2 能力培养

2.1 语法训练——形容词比较级和最高级的特殊用法

❶ 形容词比较级的特殊用法

比较级前可以用many，much，far，a little，a bit，completely，slightly等修饰，表示比较的程度

- Since people have **much** more money and time now, their shopping desires are easily triggered by ads.
  因为现在人们有了更多的金钱和时间，他们的购物欲望很容易被广告激发。

- This TV series from HBO was **slightly** better-produced than the last one.
  HBO电视台的这部电视连续剧比上一部制作得稍微好一点。

“more...than...”用于比较两种事物，表示“与其……不如……”或“更多……而不是……”

- This is **more** a modern drama **than** a reality show. 与其说这是真人秀，不如说这是一场现代话剧。
- To some performers, the talk show is **more** a way of life **than** just an interest.
  对一些表演者来说，脱口秀更多是一种生活方式，而不仅仅是一种兴趣。

“more and more”表示“越来越……”

- The commercials get **more and more** innovative. 广告变得越来越有创意了。
- Soap operas are getting **more and more** dull. 肥皂剧越来越无聊了。

“the + 比较级，the + 比较级”表示“越……越……”

- **The more, the better**. 越多越好。
- **The more fascinating** an ad is, **the more money** a company will earn.
  广告越吸引人，这家公司赚的钱就越多。

“more / less than”表示“超过 / 不到……”

- I was **more than** somewhat pleased about the article. 这篇文章让我感到很愉快。
- The boys were **less than** happy about the game show. 男孩子们对游戏节目不太满意。

“no more / less than”表示“不多于 / 不少于……”

- There were **no more than** ten actors in the TV programme. 参加电视节目的演员不超过十个人。
- The listeners who subscribe to podcasts are **no less than** 100,000. 订阅播客的听众不少于10万。

“more or less”表示“大体上”“大约”“基本上”

- Successful and creative ads could **more or less** attract customers to buy their products.
  成功而富有创意的广告大体上能够吸引顾客购买他们的产品。
- Advertising is **more or less** a way to promote economic development.
  广告基本上可以算是促进经济发展的一种方式。

② 形容词最高级的特殊用法

形容词最高级前加不定冠词a / an或不加冠词，表示“非常……”

- She is **a most mysterious** actress. 她是一位非常神秘的女演员。
- We were all **most anxious** to skip the ads. 我们都很想跳过广告。

“at one's + 形容词最高级”表示“某人处于最……的状态”

- I knew she was **at her worst** after the media interview. 我知道她在接受媒体采访后状态最差。
- The musical shows him **at his best**. 这部音乐剧展现了他最好的一面。

“at + 形容词最高级”表示程度

- She is, **at best**, a second-rate scriptwriter. 她充其量是个二流编剧。
- I have you **at least**, if I failed. 如果我失败了，至少我还有你。

练习1 请用括号中单词的比较级形式填空，并用中文翻译句子。

1 The new version of the interview audio is _____ (clear) than the old one.

_____

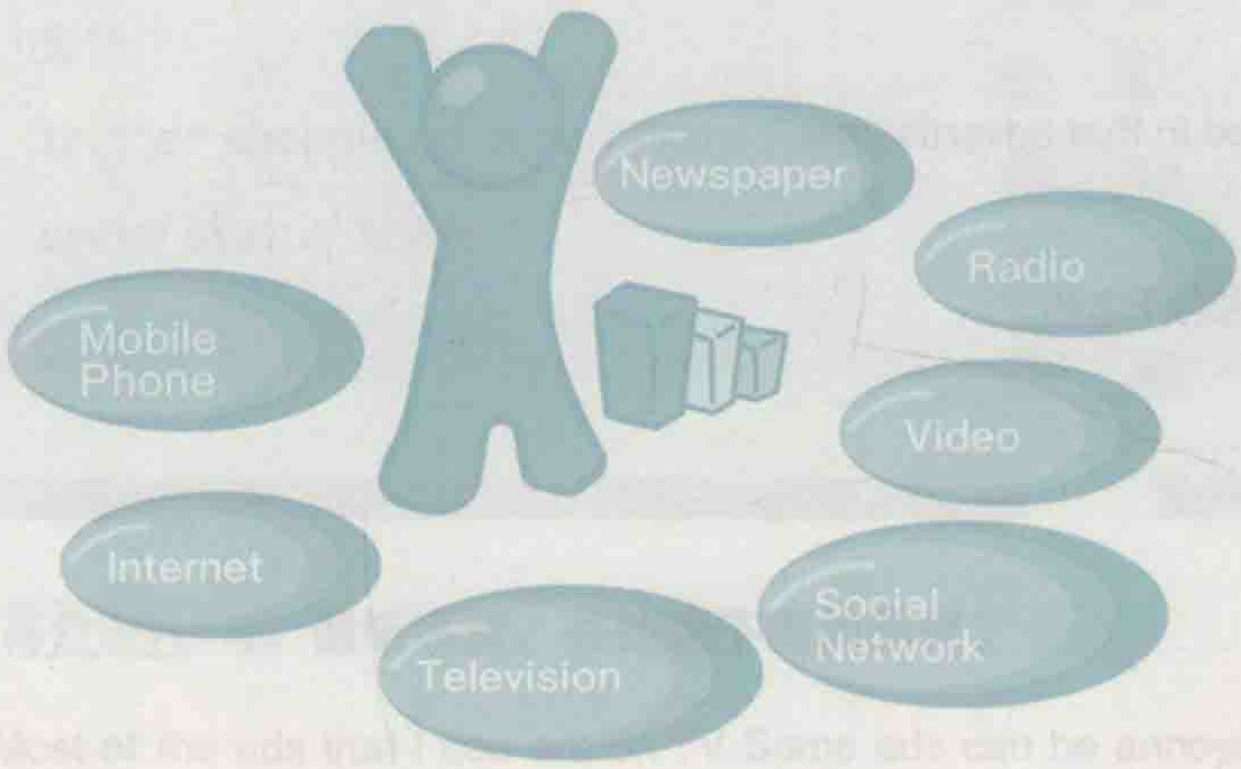
2 The model is becoming _____ (adorable).

_____

3 The _____ (rich) your product presentation is, the _____ (good) it is.

_____

练习2 请用已学词汇和语法描述下列图片所展示的话题。



Example

With the innovation of technology, we have entered an era with various methods of communication such as...

2.2 发音训练——不完全爆破 1

爆破音在某些情况下失去爆破或不完全爆破，即第一个音有停顿，无爆破，第二个音则一定要爆破，要发音。

请听录音，跟读模仿以下例句，纠正自己的发音。

爆破音/p/，/b/，/t/，/d/，/k/，/g/任意两个音相邻时，前一个发不完全爆破音

She has starred with many leading actors. 她与许多大牌演员一起担任过主角。

/ˈæ(k)tə(r)z/

The documentary series on fashion is presented by models. 这部时装系列纪录片由模特们来演。

/prɪˈzentɪ(d) baɪ/

I get on the Internet pretty much every day. 我几乎每天都上网。

/ˈɪntəne(t) ˈprɪti/

爆破音/p/，/b/，/t/，/d/，/k/，/g/在摩擦音/θ/，/ð/，/f/，/v/，/s/，/z/，/ʃ/，/ʒ/，/r/，/h/或破擦音/tʃ/，/dʒ/的前面时发不完全爆破音

The product claimed that it can make you thin without dieting. 该产品声称不节食也能让你瘦下来。

/kleɪm(d) ðæt/

My favourite scriptwriter is the one who composes *Game of Thrones*.

/'feɪvərɪ(t) 'skrɪptraɪtə(r)/

我最喜欢的编剧是《权力的游戏》的编剧。

I have more different choices when shopping online. 在网上购物时，我有更多不同的选择。

/'dɪfrən(t) tʃɔɪsɪs/

爆破音/t/，/d/在鼻辅音/m/，/n/和舌侧音/l/前发不完全爆破音

TV commercials are quite memorable when an image is associated with a catchy advertising slogan.

/kwaɪ(t) 'memərəbl/

当一种形象与一句顺口的广告词相结合时，这样的电视广告是相当令人难忘的。

I don't like watching TV at night. 我不喜欢夜里看电视。

/ə(t) naɪt/

At last, I bought the T-shirt promoted in that advertisement.

/æ(t) lɑ:st/

最终，我买了那条广告里推销的那款T恤衫。

3 话题讲解

3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——广告



雅思口语Part 1中，媒体类最热的话题是广告。



我们在日常生活中频繁接触到广告，信息轰炸式的广告有时很烦人，但有时也提供更多产品信息，让人们有更多选择。



没错，越来越多极富创造力的广告也逐渐吸引了人们的注意。还有很多公益广告对社会文明的发展也是有益的。



所以谈到广告的话题时，可以谈谈某个令人印象深刻的广告。为了避免只用 advertisements，可用ads，adverts，commercials，promotion， publicity等来替换，使表达更丰富。

考题重现 请回答以下问题。

- How do you feel about advertisements?
- Do you like advertisements on TV or in magazines?
- What kinds of advertisements have you seen before?
- Which kind of advertisement is the most popular one in your country?

话题表达

brand /brænd/ *n.* 品牌

commercial ad 商业广告

annoying and bothersome 令人讨厌并且麻烦的

humorous and amusing 幽默并且有趣的

innovative and delightful 新颖并且令人愉快的

a consumer-based society 消费型社会

competition between firms 公司之间的竞争

trigger shopping desires 激发购物欲望

social status 社会地位

A memorable ad I remember is... 一个让我印象深刻的广告是……

There is a series of ads which show/present/illustrate... 有一个系列的广告表达了/展现了/描述了……

The ad claimed that... 这则广告声称……

I saw the commercial ad on TV for the first time and it... 最初我是在电视上看到了这个商业广告，它……

At the end of the ad, the brand name of the product is shown, and... 在广告的最后会显示该产品的品牌名称，然后……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

Most of the ads that I see are on TV. Some ads can be annoying. During a TV show or a movie, ads can be really bothersome and disruptive. It is common to see ads for vehicles. They usually show the innovative features of the car and try to persuade consumers to purchase their products. However, some ads are quite amusing. They could even light up my mood sometimes.

3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——媒体

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

Describe a website you often visit.

You should say:

what the website is

whether it is a popular website

why you often visit the website

and explain what is special about it.

思路拓展与解析



雅思口语Part 2媒体类常考的话题之一是网络，比如让你描述一个经常浏览的网站。



上网已经是学习和生活中必不可少的事情，因此，介绍一个我们经常浏览的网站并不难。可以选择像百度这类搜索网站，或者新浪微博这种社交媒体平台。



还可以介绍视频网站、学习网站等。



值得一提的是，现在很多图书、报纸、杂志和节目等都有了电子版，有专属于自己的网页，我们也可以从这一方面展开话题。

话题表达

be launched 启动；发行

a registered user 注册用户

browse the web page 浏览网页

discuss social issues 讨论社会问题

in the hot water of controversy 在激烈的争论中

on a daily basis 每天

instant messenger programme 即时通信程序

keep in touch with friends 与朋友保持联系

communication tools 通信工具

give access to 向……开放

I am an avid user of...and browse/use it... 我是……的忠实用户，我浏览/使用它……

The website was launched on..., and was ranked...according to... 该网站是于……建立的，被……评为……

In a nutshell, ...provides a vast stage for users to... 简而言之，……为用户提供了一个广阔的平台去……

For its highly enhanced functions, there are considerable active users... 由于其强大的功能，有相当多的活跃用户……

On top of this, it's also a great way to... 除此之外，这也是一个很好的……的方式。

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

I am an avid user of the website *www.baidu.com*, and I browse it very often as long as I am online. Actually, I have chosen *www.baidu.com* as my homepage so that I can directly get access to the web page when using my laptop.

I usually surf this web page in order to search for information. The items are arranged in different categories. I can quickly find out about news, maps, pictures, videos, and so on.

I like Baidu because the website is very clear. The design of the page is well-organised. It is easy to grasp the information at once. I have personalised my web page, therefore it can inform me about the weather, messages, and whether or not I have received new e-mails.

As a search engine, *www.baidu.com* is very practical and convenient when I need to do some research for my studies. There is a search bar at the top of the page, which is like the magical entrance to millions of publications, research reports and statistics. You can type in anything you'd like to know and instantly get your results.

4 课后练习

4.1 请听录音，补全空白并朗读文段。

I like watching a(n) 1 _____ series called *High School Life*. I 2 _____ watch it on Saturday afternoons when I'm at my cousin's house. We love watching this series, and we eat some 3 _____ and just relax. The 4 _____ are very young and 5 _____. It's a very 6 _____ programme.

4.2 请回答以下问题。

- Will you buy something from advertisements?
- Do you think advertising plays an important role in today's society? [Why / Why not?]
- Describe a TV programme you dislike.

  You should say:

  what kind of TV programme it is

  on which channel it is broadcasted

  what kind of people are possible viewers of this programme

  and explain why you dislike it.
- Describe an advertisement that influenced you to buy something.

  You should say:

  what the advertisement was about

  what kind of people bought this product or service

  what persuaded you to buy this product or service

  and explain how you felt after buying it.

Writing

1 词汇基础

1.1 请根据中文提示，将下列单词补充完整。

1 评论 c_m_e_t　2 网上的 o_l_n_　3 观点 o_ _ni_n　4 理解 un_ _rs_a_d

5 批评 c_iti_i_e　6 准确的 ac_ _r_te　7 打印 p_i_ _　8 繁荣 t_r_v_

1.2 请从方框中选择正确的单词或短语并以其正确形式填空，完成句子。

a laptop or computer　online　acquire information　keep in touch with　celebrity

1 The Internet can help us _____ around the world.

2 A social networking site enables us to _____ friends at any time anywhere.

3 You can often get a better price if you buy products _____.

4 Downloading films onto _____ and watching them at home is more convenient than going to the cinema.

5 _____ are particularly useful in bringing in new and younger audiences.

2 能力培养

2.1 词汇表达

❶ 核心单词及其派生词

cover /'kʌvə(r)/ *v.* 报道；覆盖

coverage /'kʌvərɪdʒ/ *n.* 新闻报道

violent /'vaɪələnt/ *adj.* 暴力的

violence /'vaɪələns/ *n.* 暴力

advertise /'ædvətaɪz/ *v.* 做广告

advertisement /əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt/ *n.* 广告

dominate /'dɒmɪneɪt/ *v.* 控制

domination /ˌdɒmɪ'neɪʃn/ *n.* 控制

innovate /'ɪnəveɪt/ *v.* 创新

innovation /ˌɪnə'veɪʃn/ *n.* 创新

depend /dɪ'pend/ *v.* 依靠

dependable /dɪ'pendəbl/ *adj.* 可信的

prevail /prɪ'veɪl/ *v.* 盛行，流行

prevailing /prɪ'veɪlɪŋ/ *adj.* 普遍的，流行的

entertain /ˌentə'teɪn/ *v.* 使快乐

entertainment /ˌentə'teɪnmənt/ *n.* 娱乐

rely /rɪ'laɪ/ *v.* 信任，信赖

reliable /rɪ'laɪəbl/ *adj.* 可靠的

inform /ɪn'fɔ:m/ *v.* 通知

informative /ɪn'fɔ:mətɪv/ *adj.* 提供有用信息的

❷ 常用短语

public figure 公众人物

current affairs 时事

news outlets 新闻报道机构

print media 平面媒体（如报纸、杂志）

electronic media 电子媒体

entertainment news 娱乐新闻

objective and balanced 客观公正的

mislead the public's view 误导大众观点

voice and video conversation 语音和视频通话

digital library 数字图书馆

disclose social problems 揭露社会问题

a wide range of educational contents 广泛的教育内容

increase brand preference and loyalty 提高品牌偏好和忠实度

under parents' guidance and supervision 在父母的指导和监督下

in a virtual world 在虚拟世界中

the information age 信息时代

glue eyes on the screens 眼睛盯着屏幕

❸ 写作例句

escape from the pressure of... 逃离……的压力

- Some people think online games help them **escape from the pressure of** work.
  一些人认为网络游戏帮助他们逃离工作的压力。

exert a negative influence on... 对……产生负面影响

- The bloody images on television may **exert a negative influence on** teenagers' growth.
  电视上的血腥画面可能会对青少年的成长产生负面影响。

...is facing a growing crisis ……正面临越来越大的危机

- Nowadays print media **is facing a growing crisis** under the challenge of different new media forms.
  在各种新媒体形式的挑战下，平面媒体正面临着越来越大的危机。

...attract one's attention ……吸引某人的注意

- Advertising makes its best efforts to **attract customers' attention** and then make profits from them.
  广告尽最大努力吸引顾客的注意，然后从中获利。

练习 请从方框中选择正确的单词或短语填空，完成句子。

criminal reports	objective and balanced reports	advertising
entertainment news	brand preference and loyalty	

1 The media has the responsibility to make _____.

2 We turn to _____ for relief from the stress of our daily lives.

3 Companies invest a large amount of money in _____ their brands and products.

4 The charitable deeds made by a company will increase its _____.

5 Some argue that bad news and _____ discourage people from going out.

2.2 语法重点

主谓宾补句型

句型结构为：主语 + 谓语（及物动词）+ 宾语 + 补语（宾语补足语）

这里的补语是补充宾语部分的内容，说明宾语的意义、状态等，能够使句子的意思完整。如：在We made mobile phones a necessity.（我们使手机成为必需品。）中，a necessity就是宾语mobile phones的补语，如果没有宾语，句子变为We made mobile phones.（我们制造手机。），意思就改变了。

可以作宾语补足语的有形容词、名词（短语）、动词不定式、过去分词、现在分词、介词短语等。

形容词作宾语补足语

- Endless calling keeps people **busy**. 没完没了的电话让人们很忙。

名词或名词短语作宾语补足语

- We all consider this advertisement **a great success**.
  我们都认为这则广告很成功。

动词不定式作宾语补足语

- Advertisements encourage people **to buy the products**.
  广告鼓励人们购买产品。
- Advertising often persuades consumers **to buy things they do not need**.
  广告常常说服消费者购买他们不需要的东西。

有些动词后接省略to的动词不定式作宾语补足语。

- I saw this actress **appear in an advertisement** last night.
  我昨晚看到这个女演员出现在一则广告中。

当句子使用被动语态时，原来的宾语补足语变为主语补足语，这时需要将不定式中省略的to还原。

- This actress was seen **to appear in an advertisement** last night.
  昨晚有人看见这位女演员出现在一则广告中。

过去分词作宾语补足语

宾语与过去分词具有动宾关系，即宾语是过去分词动作的承受者。

- The reporter has all the materials **prepared** by this morning.
  截至今天上午，记者已经准备好了所有的材料。

Tips

常见的后接动词不定式作宾语补足语的动词有：require, ask, urge, encourage, inspire, motivate, allow, permit, force, push, expect, persuade, want, teach, warn, tell, order, invite, remind, forbid。

Tips

后接省略to的动词不定式作宾语补足语的动词（词组）记忆口诀为：五看二听三使役；一个帮助两均可，还有一个是感觉。

五看：notice, observe, see, watch, look at

二听：hear, listen to

三使役：have, let, make

一个帮助：help（help sb to do sth和help sb do sth均可）

感觉：feel

现在分词作宾语补足语

宾语与现在分词具有主谓关系，即宾语是现在分词动作的施加者。

- Companies usually keep advertisement **targeting** specific customer groups.
  公司通常让广告持续针对特定的客户群。

介词短语作宾语补足语

- Many people considered this film star **as** one of the most beautiful women in the world.
  许多人认为这位电影明星是世界上最美丽的女人之一。

Tips

常见的后接介词短语作宾语补足语的动词有：consider，regard，see，choose，keep，use，treat。

练习 **请从A，B两组中各选一个部分，组成八个句子，并写在横线上。**

A	B
Various media forms help	noticed by more people.
Many customers find it hard	to do good deeds or achieve something in life.
Advertising makes people aware of	in mobile phone and computer device technology.
New media platforms allow viewers	the new products available in the market.
The government should impose strict laws	to post their comments and opinions.
Celebrities can make the ideas of non-profit organisations	news circulate faster.
Public figures can encourage their fans	to refuse the temptation of advertising.
Apple presents itself as a brand leader	on fake ads targeting children.

1 _____

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

5 _____

6 _____

7 _____

8 _____

2.3 衔接方式

❶ except

意为“除……之外”，其后一般直接加名词或名词短语，也可以接that引导的名词性从句。有时也可以用except for + 名词表示“除了……”。

- This advertisement does not offer too much information about the product, **except that it shows** fancy pictures.
  除了展示精美的图片外，这则广告并没有提供太多关于产品的信息。
- **Except for** educational programmes, variety shows also provide many educational contents.
  除了教育类节目，综艺节目也会提供很多教育性内容。

❷ to some extent

意为“在一定程度上，在某种程度上”，表示对句子所描述的内容的程度限定，并非完全肯定或在任何时候都成立。可以用在句中、句首或句尾。

- Some argue that watching television, **to some extent**, is good for children's development.
  一些人认为，在某种程度上，看电视对孩子的成长有好处。

❸ regardless of

意为“不管，无论”，后面一般加名词或名词短语，也可以接从句。

- The actress can always receive huge attention **regardless of** where she appears.
  这位女演员无论出现在哪里，总是能得到大量关注。
- Computer games should not be open to all players **regardless of** age.
  电脑游戏不应该没有年龄限制地开放给所有玩家。

❹ such as

意为“比如”，放在句中，举例说明上文的内容，后面一般加名词或名词短语。

- News is nowadays also provided through other channels **such as** social networks.
  如今，诸如社交网络等其他渠道也提供新闻内容。

❺ apart from

意为“除……之外”，后面一般加名词或名词短语，既可放在句首，也可放在句中。

- **Apart from** music and movies, some electronic books are also available to download. 除了音乐和电影，一些电子书也可以下载。

❻ no matter who / where / what / how

意为“无论……”，引导让步状语从句，既可放在主句之前，也可放在主句之后。

- **No matter how** much time we spend on the games, we should realise that they are not real life.
  不管我们在游戏上花了多少时间，我们都应该意识到游戏不是真实的生活。

Tips

except和apart from有时可以替换使用。二者的区别是：except只能表示从同一类事物中排除，而apart from既可表示排除又可表示补充。

练习 **请使用本单元学过的衔接词或短语并以其正确形式填空，完成句子。**

1 _____ calling, smartphones develop many other functions over the last decade.

2 People should realise that we cannot achieve happiness from outside, _____ technology or the newest fad.

3 A journalist should maintain his integrity in his report _____ his past experiences.

4 Advertising, _____, has greatly affected our purchasing decisions.

5 _____ how much people rely on their smartphones, they should spare time for their inner voices and identify what sparks joy in their real lives.

3 题型讲解

3.1 媒体类话题

雅思写作大作文的主体段通常包含以下几个部分：

idea	观点
explanation	解释观点
further explanation / example	进一步解释 / 举例
detail / result of the example	细节 / 举例的结果
additional information	补充信息
transition	转折
comparison	对比
conclusion	结论



请以下面的题目为例，学习大作文主体段的写作。

> ***In recent years, more and more people are choosing to read e-books rather than paper books. Do the advantages outweigh the disadvantages of this trend?***
>
> Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

❶ 题型分析

该题目为“分析利弊”题型，中心话题为：阅读电子书的利弊。

写作的观点一般分为三种：利大于弊；弊大于利；各有利弊。

认为利大于弊的主体段布局：主体段1（优点1）；主体段2（优点2）。

认为弊大于利的主体段布局：主体段1（缺点1）；主体段2（缺点2）。

认为各有利弊的主体段布局：主体段1（优点 / 缺点）；主体段2（缺点 / 优点）。

❷ 段落组织

主体段1 缺点

idea	On the one hand, it has been proved that reading books online may bring a number of health problems.
explanation	Staring at digital screens for a long period of time will certainly cause eye strain and headaches.
further explanation	Its long-term effects could be even worse, such as the falling eyesight in a growing number of youngsters.
detail	Some may have to wear glasses since primary school to see things clearly.
conclusion	These drawbacks are major obstacles for people to accept it.

观点	一方面，事实证明，在线阅读可能会带来一些健康问题。
解释观点	长时间盯着电子屏幕肯定会导致眼睛疲劳和头痛。
进一步解释	它的长期影响可能更大，比如越来越多的年轻人视力下降。
细节	有些人可能从小学开始就必须戴眼镜才能看得清楚。
结论	这些缺点成为人们接受它的主要障碍。

主体段2 优点

idea	On the other land, buying e-books online can be time-saving and convenient.
explanation	We can easily find and pay for some books through a few clicks, and then we can enjoy reading immediately.
further explanation	There is no need to look for them from one store to another.
additional information	What's more, the e-book reader allows us to read at any time and places, especially while we are travelling.
conclusion	The merits of e-books are clearly making them popular increasingly.

观点	另一方面，在网上购买电子书既省时又方便。
解释观点	我们点击几下鼠标，就能轻易地找到一些书并购买，然后我们可以立即享受阅读。
进一步解释	没必要从一个商店到另一个商店去寻找了。
补充信息	而且，电子书阅读器让我们可以在任何时间任何地点阅读，尤其是旅行的时候。
结论	显然，电子书的优点使得它们越来越受欢迎了。

练习 **请根据题目，判断所给范文的两个主体段中句子的作用。**

Today people are surrounded by many kinds of advertising and this is having an increasing effect on our lives. Do the positive effects outweigh the negative effects?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

主体段1 积极影响

There are reasons to believe that advertising exerts a positive influence on our daily life.	1 _____
Advertising informs us of the available products on the market.	2 _____
This increases the choices we have and the knowledge of the latest products.	3 _____
After detailed comparison, we can get the most satisfying product.	4 _____
Therefore, advertising provides useful information in making a wise decision about buying something.	5 _____

主体段2 消极影响

However, the advertisement indeed has some negative effects on customers.	6 _____
Some of the misleading and beautified advertisements may cause customers to have unrealistic expectations of the effectiveness of the advertised products.	7 _____
Persuaded by the ads, they are more likely to spend their money on these products.	8 _____
After they try the products, their illusions are finally broken.	9 _____
In that sense, advertisements result in not only money wasting but also deep disappointment.	10 _____

3.2 表格 2

表格题主体段写法：

1. 在主体段中，需要先将所给数据信息分类，然后分段陈述。
2. 分类方法：比较所给数据的相似性和不同点，相似度较高的为一组。相似性可以从不同角度选取，如数值的大小、变化大小等。
3. 组织段落时，要从最明显的变化开始描述，如变化最大的项目。将变化较小的项目留到最后，如果时间或篇幅有限，对这些项目进行简短描述即可。

Tips

不要逐条描述数据，因为这样的回答只有描述而没有分析，会影响分数。

请以下面的题目为例，学习表格题主体段的写作。

The table below shows the worldwide market share of notebook computer company in the years 2016 and 2017.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Company	2016 Market Share (%)	2017 Market Share (%)
HP	31.4	34
Dell	16.6	20.2
Acer	11.6	10.7
Toshiba	6.2	7.3
Lenovo	6.6	6.2
Fujitsu-Siemens	4.8	2.3
Others	22.8	19.3
Total	100	100

开头段

The table shows the percentages of the worldwide market share taken by various computer companies in 2016 and 2017. In these two years, HP kept the largest proportion whereas Fujitsu-Siemens was the smallest one. Moreover, many companies saw a decline over this period.

该表显示了2016年和2017年各电脑公司在世界范围内所占市场份额的百分比。在这两年中，惠普所占比例最大，而富士通–西门子所占比例最小。此外，很多公司的市场份额在这段时间都有所下滑。

主体段1 项目（HP, Dell, others）

The figure of HP increased from 31.4 per cent in 2016 to 34 per cent in the following year. Similarly, the share of Dell also saw a rise of nearly 4 per cent from 16.6 per cent to 20.2 per cent over the same time. In contrast, there was a decline of 3.5 per cent in the proportion of other unnamed computer companies.

惠普的数字从2016年的31.4%上升到次年的34%。同样地，戴尔的市场份额也从16.6%升至20.2%，增幅接近4%。相比之下，其他未提名字的计算机公司的市场份额下降了3.5%。

主体段2 项目（Acer, Toshiba, Lenovo, Fujitsu-Siemens）

In terms of other brands, the sales of Acer accounted for 11.6 per cent of the market share in 2016 and dropped to 10.7 per cent in the next year. There were similar figures for Lenovo and Toshiba in 2016, but they experienced different changes in 2017, with an increase in Toshiba and a decrease in Lenovo. Meanwhile, there was a more noticeable drop of more than 2 per cent in the figure for Fujitsu-Siemens.

从其他品牌来看，宏碁在2016年的销售额占到市场份额的11.6%，而在接下来的一年里，这一比例下降到了10.7%。2016年，联想和东芝的数据类似，但2017年，它们的变化方向不同，东芝增加了，联想减少了。与此同时，富士通–西门子的数据下降更明显，超过2%。

练习 请根据以上题目，从方框中选择正确的表述并以其正确形式补全下列范文的主体段。

except for	a difference	experience a decrease	respectively
occupy	in terms of	see a noticeable fall	shrink

主体段1 时间（2016年）

To begin with, in 2016, there was 1 _____ of more than 25 per cent between the market share of HP and Fujitsu-Siemens. Both HP and other unnamed companies together held a larger percentage of over 20 per cent, at 31.4 per cent and 22.8 per cent 2 _____. The middle group included two companies, Dell and Acer, which both had a figure of more than 10 per cent. The rest companies, Toshiba, Lenovo and Fujitsu-Siemens, only 3 _____ less than 10 per cent.

主体段2 时间（2017年）

In the next year, 4 _____ HP, Dell and Toshiba, all the rest categories 5 _____, more or less, in their market share. The percentage of HP increased to 34 per cent and Dell to 20.2 per cent. In contrast, Toshiba only had an increase of 1.1 per cent in its figure. 6 _____ the decreasing group, other unnamed corporations 7 _____ in their market share, dropping to 19.3 per cent. Additionally, Acer, Fujitsu-Siemens, and Lenovo 8 _____ to 10.7 per cent, 2.3 per cent and 6.2 per cent respectively.

4 课后练习

4.1 请根据中文提示，将所给英文表达重新排序，组成一个语义完整的句子。

1 广告增强了在产品领域占主导地位的公司的力量。

in product fields / the dominant firms / enhances / advertising / the power of

_____

2 在所有平面媒体都面临前所未有的挑战之际，许多出版刊物已经赶去“拥抱”社交网络技术了。

to embrace / many publications / unprecedented challenges / have rushed / at a time of / social networking technologies / for all print media

_____

3 电视节目使孩子们了解世界上不同的国家和不同的文化。

and various cultures / television programmes / to know / in the world / enable children / different countries

_____

4 一个成功的教育项目可以激励孩子们勇敢地尝试一些新事物。

something new / a successful educational project / with courage / children / to try / can inspire

5 看电视可能会减少学生发展个人兴趣和学习的时间。

personal interests / watching television / in developing / may decrease / and studying / students' time

6 一直盯着电脑屏幕使他无暇与周围的人交流。

people around him / he had no time / with his eyes / to interact with / glued to the computer screen

4.2 请根据题目，从方框中选择正确的表述并以其正确形式填空，完成短文。

apart from	made up	in contrast	upward trends
standing at	rose sharply	a significant increase	four times higher

The table shows the percentage of mobile phone owners using various mobile phone features.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Percentage of mobile phone owners using various mobile phone features

Features	2010 (%)	2014 (%)	2018 (%)
Make calls	100	100	99
Take photos	66	71	76
Send & receive text messages	73	75	79
Play games	17	42	41
Search the Internet	*no data*	41	73
Play music	12	18	26
Record videos	*no data*	9	35

The table gives information about the rate of people using various mobile phone features from 2010 to 2018. Overall, it is clear that most people used mobile phones for calling. There was an upward trend in almost all features especially searching the Internet.

In 2010, the percentage of making calls 1 _____ 100%, the highest figure in all features. The second highest rate was sending and receiving text messages, 2 _____ 73%. 3 _____, less than 20% of people used their phones to play games and music. There was no data for people using a mobile phone for searching the Internet and recording videos.

By 2018, 4 _____ the slight decrease in the figures of making calls and playing games, the other five categories had 5 _____ compared with the figures in 2014. The rate of searching the Internet 6 _____ from 41% in 2014 to 73% in 2018. At the same time, the rate of recording videos was nearly 7 _____ than the figure in 2014 (9%). There was 8 _____ in the percentage of playing music.

Unit 5 Science and Technology

Listening

1 词汇基础

1.1 请选出画线单词或短语的同义表达。

1 Advanced technology is a double-edged sword.

A traditional　　B developed　　C fascinating

2 He is addicted to the mobile phone.

A cannot get rid of　　B is obsessed with　　C is concerned with

3 A hacker can steal one's ID through the Internet.

A someone who likes using computers　　B someone who likes stealing things

C someone who can access data illegally

4 My computer was infected by an unknown virus.

A a living thing that makes humans sick　　B a part of computer hardware

C instructions that are designed to destroy data

5 The books should be arranged in sequence according to their categories.

A in chaos　　B one by one　　C in total

6 The software did not remind me of cancelling my subscription.

A purchase　　B guidance　　C booking

1.2 请将动词与介词短语相匹配。

1 switch	A down the range
2 steal	B about an issue
3 consider	C from a shop
4 speed	D up the process
5 narrow	E off the radio

1.3 请听三段对话，选出说话人各自遇到的问题。

A the difficulty of obtaining online accounts　B cannot remember passwords　C hackers

D loss of the mobile phone　E a computer system that runs slowly

1 _____　2 _____　3 _____

场景词汇

advanced /əd'vɑ:nst/ *adj.* 先进的
creative /kri'eɪtɪv/ *adj.* 有创意的
educational /ˌedʒu'keɪʃənl/ *adj.* 有教育意义的
extraordinary /ɪk'strɔ:dnri/ *adj.* 非凡的
high-tech /ˌhaɪ 'tek/ *adj.* 高科技的
scientific /ˌsaɪən'tɪfɪk/ *adj.* 科学的
online /ˌɒn'laɪn/ *adj.* 在线的
chemical /'kemɪkl/ *adj.* 化学的
global /'gləʊbl/ *adj.* 全球的
addiction /ə'dɪkʃn/ *n.* 上瘾
co-operate /kəʊ'ɒpəreɪt/ *v.* 合作
connect /kə'nekt/ *v.* 连接
communicate /kə'mju:nɪkeɪt/ *v.* 交流
consider /kən'sɪdə(r)/ *v.* 考虑
upload /ˌʌp'ləʊd/ *v.* 上传
contain /kən'teɪn/ *v.* 包含
characteristic /ˌkærəktə'rɪstɪk/ *n.* 特征
challenge /'tʃælɪndʒ/ *n.* 挑战
concept /'kɒnsept/ *n.* 观念
complex /'kɒmpleks/ *adj.* 复杂的 *n.* 综合楼群
hacker /'hækə(r)/ *n.* 黑客
guidance /'gaɪdns/ *n.* 指导
laptop /'læptɒp/ *n.* 笔记本电脑
subscription /səb'skrɪpʃn/ *n.* 订阅（费）
password /'pɑ:swɜ:d/ *n.* 密码
progress /'prəʊgres/ *n.* 进步
robot /'rəʊbɒt/ *n.* 机器人
invention /ɪn'venʃn/ *n.* 发明
speed up 加速
take...for granted 把……当作理所当然

2 能力培养

2.1 了解多项选择题

雅思听力考试中的多项选择题一般是从五个或七个备选项中选出两个或三个正确答案，而选项的顺序并非是录音中信息出现的顺序，这也为题目增加了难度。

我们可以关注以下几点来排除多项选择题中的干扰项。

- 否定关系：录音中出现not或其他含否定意义的词时，与此相关的表达肯定含义的选项一般都是错误的。
- 并列关系：选项中如果前后两个词或短语用and或or连接，要注意听二者是否都在录音中出现了。如果没有全部提到，则可排除该选项。

- 顺序关系：注意选项使用的时态和录音是否一致。如不一致，则可排除该选项。
- 修饰陷阱：有一些正确的信息可能会跟一些并未在录音中出现的形容词或副词搭配，如only，always，often，all等，导致选项的语义与录音不一致。
- 同义替换：正确的选项往往不会是录音的原词原句，而是用同义替换的方式表达，如选项中的media可用来指代录音中的newspaper。因此如果在选项中看到了原词原句，要细心分辨，排除错误选项。

2.2 解题步骤

1. 阅读题目要求，确定选择几个答案。
2. 快速阅读题目和选项，理解题目信息，画出关键词，包括主语名词、特殊名词、数字、斜体字、黑体字等，再注意看动词。
3. 预测听力信息，尤其注意判断哪些地方会有干扰信息，如时间、极值、偏好等。
4. 听录音，适当记笔记，注意表示逻辑关系的信号词。
5. 填答题卡，注意核对答案，避免漏填、错填。

2.3 巩固练习

练习1 请看题目，圈出题目中的关键词。

Questions 1 and 2

*Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

Which **TWO** are the causes of lecture inefficiency?

A There are too many activities to take part in.

B The lecturer's presentation is hard to understand.

C Students have no enthusiasm for lectures.

D The content learned in class is hard to recall.

E It has little correlation to the exam.

Questions 3 and 4

*Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

Which **TWO** are the reasons for supporting traditional lectures?

A Not enough time is given for feedback.

B Interactive learning is too expensive.

C Teachers are reluctant to change their teaching methods.

D Students prefer traditional methods.

E Students find the interactive learning methods confusing.

练习2 **请根据练习1的题目，选出以下单词或短语的同义替换。**

1 inefficiency

A students can obtain little knowledge

B students can get more information

C students can learn quickly

2 enthusiasm

A happiness　　B boredom　　C interests of learning

3 correlation

A connection　　B correction　　C coincidence

4 feedback

A encouragement　　B praise　　C response

5 interactive learning

A a kind of traditional learning　　B a kind of hands-on learning approach　　C a kind of self-learning

6 are reluctant to

A are willing to　　B do not like to　　C probably would

练习3 **请听两段对话，根据题目做简要的笔记，然后思考以下问题。**

1 What problem does the man have?

2 What problem does the woman have?

练习4 **请听一段对话，写出其中的信号词。**

Presenter: Hello and welcome to today's edition of *Tomorrow's World*. We'll discuss the Internet with Dr Emily Ross from the University of Leeds. Dr Ross, can you tell us when the Internet was invented?

Dr Ross: 1 _____, that's a very good question. The Internet was 2 _____ developed for military reasons by the US Army in the mid-twentieth century. The government officials were concerned about communications in a nuclear war. 3 _____ they came up with the idea of connecting computers into a network 4 _____ if one part of the network was destroyed, the rest of it would continue to function.

Presenter: So the 5 _____ people who used the network were scientists and researchers, right?

Dr Ross: That's right. People in universities started sending information all over the world, sharing ideas and research findings. They were 6 _____ shocked by how effective it was. It wasn't until the 1970s that the term 'Internet' was used.

Presenter: But it 7 _____ until the mid-1990s that the Internet became what we recognise today.

Dr Ross: That's true. The Internet is a 8 _____ part of entertainment, communications, learning and getting information now.

3 题型讲解

3.1 高频场景

科技类场景多出现在雅思听力考试的Part 3和Part 4中，题型以选择题为主，难度较大。考生需要掌握较多与科技相关的场景词汇。录音多以讲座（lecture）的形式出现，考查的重点是某项科技的原理及其应用。建议考生平常多关注科技方面的英语报道，积累相关词汇。该场景下的高频考点包括：

- 科技的利弊
- 某一项科技的现实应用
- 学校科技项目讨论
- 运用科技解决现实问题，如环境问题
- 科技的变革

3.2 题型演练

练习1 **请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。**

Questions 1 and 2

*Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

Choose **TWO** suggestions for adults in the Science Museum.

A visit all exhibitions as soon as possible

B have guided tours

C wait at the ground floor

D visit the main exhibition

E appreciate wonderful statues

Questions 3 and 4

*Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

Choose **TWO** activities children can do in the museum.

A play with different objects to make special shapes

B take history classes

C learn the technology of agriculture

D do research on the history of scientific technology

E play with toddlers

Questions 5 and 6

*Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

Choose **TWO** places for teenagers.

A farming exhibition

B industrial exhibition

C Shapes and Patterns

D space exhibition

E robot workshop

练习2 **请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。**

Questions 1–3

*Choose **THREE** letters, **A–E**.*

Choose **THREE** reasons for the addiction of video games.

A The quality of video games is high.

B Gamers find it easier to achieve goals in video games.

C Players are easily satisfied when playing video games.

D Gamers can experience the violence that they cannot have in the real world.

E Many games are not easy to accomplish.

Questions 4 and 5

*Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

Choose **TWO** downsides of video games.

A Video games can make children less violent.

B Gamers can become lazier.

C Gamers can be related to violence in the games.

D People who like to play video games may have eating problems.

E Gamers will trust others more easily.

Questions 6 and 7

*Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

Choose **TWO** ways to deal with the problem of addiction.

A take some medication from the doctor

B give up games forever

C seek help and advice

D limit time to play video games

E develop a different healthy habit

4 课后练习

4.1 请看题目，圈出题目中的关键词。

Questions 1–3

*Choose **THREE** letters, **A–F**.*

Which **THREE** features did animation films have before Walt Disney?

A They were short.

B They were invented before the camera.

C They needed many human faces.

D They needed many pictures.

E They could be made by paper.

F They looked like today's animation films.

Questions 4 and 5

*Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

Which **TWO** animation films were produced by Disney?

A *Steamboat Willie*

B *Toy Story*

C *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*

D *Finding Nemo*

E *Shrek*

Questions 6 and 7

*Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

Which **TWO** were the results of improved computer technology?

A the film of *Toy Story*

B the invention of a moving image

C the fur of characters appearing real on the screen

D the introduction of sound

E the appearance of the cells

4.2 请听一段对话，并按照要求完成4.1中的题目。

4.3 请听一段对话，并根据题目做笔记。

Question 1

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

What kind of people does Jane think of as successful inventors?

A people who always have creative ideas

B people who believe they can become extremely rich

C people who start with a simple idea

Question 2

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

What's Derek's problem?

A He can't tell others that he is an inventor.

B He doesn't know if he should quit his job.

C He doesn't have enough money for inventing.

Questions 3–5

*Choose **THREE** letters, **A–E**.*

Which **THREE** pieces of advice does Jane give Peta?

A to write all the thoughts down

B to work on a few ideas at the same time

C to only practise one idea at a time

D to choose the best idea and abandon the others

E to keep some ideas for later work

4.4 请再听一遍4.3的对话，并按照要求完成4.3中的题目。

Reading

1 词汇基础

1.1 请将下列单词与其释义相匹配。

1 pharmacy
2 biochemistry
3 nanotechnology
4 psychology
5 genetics

A the scientific study of the mind and how it influences behaviour
B the branch of technology that deals with structures that are less than 100 nanometres long
C the scientific study of the ways in which different characteristics are passed from each generation of living things to the next
D the scientific study of the chemistry of living things
E the study of how to prepare medicines and drugs

1.2 请从方框中选择正确的单词填空，完成句子。

satellite　robot　engine　microscope　radio　aeroplane

1 The company is trying to make the way for the multifunctional _____ to live with human beings.
2 The latest _____ has greatly improved fuel efficiency.
3 The broadcast comes live via _____ from New York.
4 Thanks to the invention of the _____, everyone gets easy access to all kinds of information including weather forecasts, road conditions, and popular music.
5 Among all the means of transport, the _____ is considered the fastest and safest.
6 The presence of the _____ allowed scientists to make the ground-breaking advance into the micro world.

1.3 请阅读文章，将四大科技热点与其对应的描述相匹配。

The Four Hottest Tech Trends That Are Transforming the World in 2018

Artificial Intelligence

Artificial intelligence (AI) usually makes people think of science fiction movies or a future where machines have taken over the world. The main problem with AI nowadays isn't that it's too intelligent, but that it's too basic in many cases. One detail that confuses people is that most AI is extremely bad at dealing with ambiguity, grey areas, and understanding how to distinguish between the least and most important data. In fact, most machines still require humans to do much of the work.

Cybersecurity

If you read the latest technology news, you'll notice cybersecurity is the hottest topic. Reports might include a breach of a company or government computer system, a weakness in a piece of software, or poor security measures at a company. Since the technology industry has become so obsessed with innovation, security issues have often been neglected as it strives to perfect their products. Although advances have been made in recent years, with many companies adopting tighter security measures, cyber attackers tend to target products that are outdated and haven't been upgraded with the latest cybersecurity software. In this sense, cybersecurity issues are likely to get worse before they get better. Much work still needs to be done in the field of cybersecurity.

Internet of Things

As far back as it is possible, we know that the technology revolution has been about things like computers, smartphones, and digital cameras. Nowadays, however, the tech-revolution is about how technology is integrated into the world around us, from cars and home appliances to drones, traffic lights, security cameras and entire cities. This is what is referred to as the Internet of Things. Although the Internet of Things presents a range of new possibilities within our environment, its main function is to collect data. This is to enable us to measure and quantify things in completely new ways, which will then enable us to monitor and manage our environment and our possessions, allowing us to locate problems that we might not know about and fix them up.

Digital Transformation

The phrase 'digital transformation' is more commonly heard among businesses and the technology industry in recent years. While the other three items listed above all relate to technology, digital transformation is not. It's simply about telling better stories. Many people in the industry have been ensuring IT is integrated into the business more effectively for decades. It is evident that this still hasn't happened. Digital transformation has provided impetus for making this dream a reality.

1 Artificial Intelligence	A It aims to help technology enter our daily life.
2 Cybersecurity	B The term is gaining more attention in the field of businesses and the technology industry these days.
3 Internet of Things	C It is a heated topic now, but it has lacked attention due to the overconcentration on updating technology in the past years.
4 Digital Transformation	D It lacks the ability to process uncertainty and prioritise statistics.

1.4 请用横线画出文章中的生词和短语，查阅词典确认含义，并写在下面的横线上。

主题词汇

genetics /dʒə'netɪks/ *n.* 遗传学
anatomy /ə'nætəmi/ *n.* 解剖学
psychiatry /saɪ'kaɪətri/ *n.* 精神病学
dynamics /daɪ'næmɪks/ *n.* 动力学，力学
microscope /'maɪkrəskəʊp/ *n.* 显微镜
atom /'ætəm/ *n.* 原子
molecule /'mɒlɪkjuːl/ *n.* 分子
neuron /'njʊərɒn/ *n.* 神经元
nervous system 神经系统
gene /dʒiːn/ *n.* 基因
modify /'mɒdɪfaɪ/ *v.* 修饰
circuit /'sɜːkɪt/ *n.* 电路
conductor /kən'dʌktə(r)/ *n.* 导体
magnetism /'mægnətɪzəm/ *n.* 磁力
gravity /'grævəti/ *n.* 重力
friction /'frɪkʃn/ *n.* 摩擦力
motion /'məʊʃn/ *n.* 动作；运动
element /'elɪmənt/ *n.* 元素
compound /'kɒmpaʊnd/ *n.* 化合物
static electricity 静电
chemical reaction 化学反应

2 能力培养

小结

在前面四个单元里，我们学习了雅思阅读考试中的两大类文章——说明文和议论文，以及它们各自的特征。说明文和议论文的重点分别在于辨别文章的事实信息和辨别文章的观点信息。

Unit 1 & Unit 3

说明文侧重于描述客观存在的经验、事实、情况等信息，其写作结构通常包括描述、流程顺序或时间顺序、比较与对比、解释因果等类型；议论文则重在向读者阐述某种道理或发表某种见解，带有一定的主观性质，因此议论文都会有明确的观点、充分的论据以及论证过程，对逻辑的要求也更为严谨。雅思阅读考试中的议论文可分为实验类与逻辑论证类两大类别，且以逻辑论证类为主。论证方法包括正反观点分析、优缺点分析、原因分析、问题—解决方案等。无论是说明文还是议论文，如果能够预先熟悉各类文章的基本结构，对理解和应试都会很有帮助。

Unit 2 & Unit 4

说明文和议论文中包含的信息主要以事实信息和观点主张为主，前者属于客观存在的、能被各种证据所证实的信息，如数据、描述、原因、结果、流程等信息；而后者则属于作者或他人所坚持认为的道理，带有主观色彩，通常这类信息可以根据引号内的信息、表达观点的动词或短语、祈使句等在文章中定位。议论文的观点需要客观事实来支撑，而说明文有时也会包含作者的主张和呼吁，因此准确定位和区分这些信息可以帮助考生更好地解答涉及细节信息的题目。

任务1 **请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。**

The Invention of the Light Bulb

The electric light is one of the everyday conveniences that most affect our lives. And everybody knows it was 'invented' by Thomas Alva Edison in 1879. But that is not the whole story. Although Edison could be said to have created the first commercially practical incandescent light, he was neither the first nor the only person trying to invent an incandescent light bulb. In fact, some historians claim there were over 20 inventors of incandescent lamps prior to Edison's version.

In the early 19th century, Humphrey Davy invented the world's first electric light. After conducting multiple experiments with electricity, he ultimately invented the electric battery, by connecting wires to a battery pack and a piece of carbon. The result of the experiment was a brilliant glow from the carbon. This came to be known as the electric arc lamp. Yet while it certainly produced light, the effects of the glow were only short-lasting.

Over the next several decades, other inventors also created 'light bulbs', but no designs emerged for commercial application. More notably, in 1840, British scientist Warren De la Rue enclosed a coiled platinum filament in a vacuum tube and passed an electric current through it. The design was based on the concept that the high melting point of platinum would allow it to operate at high temperatures and that the evacuated chamber would contain fewer gas molecules to react with the platinum, improving its longevity. Although the design is efficient, the cost of the platinum made it impractical for commercial production.

Several years later, an English physicist called Joseph Wilson Swan created a 'light bulb' by enclosing carbonised paper filaments in an evacuated glass bulb. And by 1860, he had a working prototype, but the lack of a good vacuum and an adequate supply of electricity resulted in a bulb whose lifetime was much too short to be considered an effective producer of light. In the 1870s, better vacuum pumps became available and Swan continued experiments on light bulbs. In 1880, Swan finally developed a longer lasting light bulb in which a treated cotton thread was used. It removed the problem of early bulb blackening as well.

In the 1870s, two Canadians named Henry Woodward and Mathew Evans built their lamps with different sizes and shapes of carbon rods held between electrodes in glass cylinders filled with nitrogen. They attempted to commercialise their lamps, but were unsuccessful. So they eventually sold their patent to Edison.

In 1878, Thomas Edison began serious research into developing a practical incandescent lamp and filed his first patent application for 'Improvement in Electric Lights'. Then he continued to test several types of material for metal filaments to improve his original design and by the

end of 1879, he filed another US patent for an electric lamp with a modified design. The patent noted various means of developing the carbon filament, which included the use of cotton and linen thread, wood splints, and paper coiled in a series of ways. A few months later, Edison and his team further enhanced the design and developed something that more closely resembles a modern light bulb.

1 这篇文章主要的结构是什么?

A descriptive

B chronological

C compare and contrast

D cause and effect

2 请将下列人物与其对应的信息相匹配。

1) Humphrey Davy

2) Warren De la Rue

3) Joseph Wilson Swan

4) Henry Woodward & Mathew Evans

5) Thomas Edison

A the use of platinum to lengthen the life of lamps

B the creation of a 'light bulb' by putting carbonised paper filaments into a glass bulb

C a modified design of an electric lamp and a series of improvements following that

D a failed attempt to commercialise their design of lamps

E the invention of the electric arc lamp

任务2 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The Digital Divide Still Exists

Most of us have access to the Internet on a daily basis, sharing information in the workplace or communicating with others. Many of us take advantage of the Internet without realising it. Sometimes we even complain about the Internet being slow or that the page isn't loading.

While we complain or take advantage of our technology, there are people who do not have access to it at all. This is called the Digital Divide. The digital divide is 'a divide between people who have access to information and communication technology (ICT) and people who don't'. The Internet technology has advanced and continues to be improving with new things. But, there are people in the world who are unaware of these improvements and advances. With no access, they are prevented from having the same knowledge, information, and opportunities.

Who Is Missing and Affected?

According to the research, those who have less access to the Internet tend to be from developing countries. People in the developed countries have more access to the Internet. Of

course, there is no country that has 100% access to the Internet. This indicates that the digital divide exists, more or less in developing and developed countries.

Generally speaking, money is an important factor that determines who is able to access the Internet. The Internet technology is expensive, which makes it unaffordable for some people. Those who are financially unstable would not be able to afford it because they have other priorities. Also, poorer countries are not able to access the Internet as it is unavailable to them. Ultimately, the more money you have, the more technology and information you are able to access.

How to Put an End to This?

There are many non-profit organisations which are working to provide Internet access to everyone. One of them is called 'Close the Gap'. Its goal is to provide computers for developing countries, as well as working with other companies to provide hardware and software solutions. By doing this, it gives everyone access to obtaining information, knowledge, and opportunities. This is beneficial for everyone, as communication and information are being shared equally and fairly to one another. The Internet should be a right and not a luxury, because it is a basic social necessity of the 21st century.

1 这篇文章的论证方法是什么?

A for and against

B pros and cons

C cause analysis

D problem-solution

2 Which of the following statements can NOT support the title 'The Digital Divide Still Exists'?

A Like most people, we take advantage of the Internet and completely take it for granted.

B It tends to be the case that people with less access to the Internet come from developing countries.

C Even so, developed countries actually have greater access to the Internet, although no single country in the world has 100% access to the Internet.

D Those on lower incomes are generally forced to sacrifice Internet access as other priorities are more important.

3 请在文章中画出解决数字鸿沟（digital divide）问题的句子。

3 题型讲解

判断题（YES / NO / NOT GIVEN）

在雅思阅读考试中，判断题还有另一种形式，即YES / NO / NOT GIVEN。这类题型通常是针对文章中出现的作者或者他人观点而设置的，要求考生根据文章中的信息判断题目中的表述是否正确，考查考生辨别观点与主张的能力。在雅思阅读考试中，TRUE / FALSE / NOT GIVEN和YES / NO / NOT GIVEN两类判断题之间的差别很小，均要求考生能够合理运用定位关键词的技巧找到文章中的信息，因此这两种题型在答题时没有本质上的差别。

任务1 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

What Is Nanotechnology?

Nanotechnology is science, engineering, and technology conducted at the nanoscale, which is about 1 to 100 nanometres. Nanoscience and nanotechnology are the study and application of extremely small things and can be used across all the other science fields, such as chemistry, biology, physics, materials science, and engineering.

One nanometre is a billionth of a metre, which is hard for us to imagine. To illustrate, here are a few examples:

- There are 25,400,000 nanometres in an inch;
- A sheet of newspaper is about 100,000 nanometres thick;
- On a comparative scale, if a marble were a nanometre, then one metre would be the size of the Earth.

Nanoscience and nanotechnology involve the ability to see and to control individual atoms and molecules. Everything on the Earth is made up of atoms — the food we eat, the clothes we wear, the buildings and houses we live in, and our own bodies.

It is impossible to see something as small as an atom with the naked eye. In fact, it's impossible to see even with the microscopes typically used in a high school science class. As a matter of fact, the microscopes needed to see things at the nanoscale are 'new' inventions. They were invented nearly 30 years ago. Only after scientists had the right tools and applied them to their research, the age of nanotechnology was born.

Although modern nanoscience and nanotechnology are quite new, nanoscale materials were used for centuries. Alternate-sized gold and silver particles created colours in the dyed glass windows of medieval churches hundreds of years ago. The artists back then just didn't know that the way they used to create these beautiful works of art actually led to the changes in the composition of the materials they were working with.

Today's scientists and engineers are finding a wide variety of ways to take advantage of the enhanced properties of materials at the nanoscale, such as higher strength, lighter weight, increased control of light spectrum, and greater chemical reactivity.

1 请在文章中画出下列信息。

1) the fields in which nanotechnology is applied to

2) examples used to demonstrate what one nanometre is

3) the birth of necessary equipment by which nanotechnology develops

4) current applications in terms of materials science

2 Do the following statements agree with the claims of the writer in the passage?

Write

YES *if the statement agrees with the claims of the writer*

NO *if the statement contradicts the claims of the writer*

NOT GIVEN *if it is impossible to say what the writer thinks about this*

1) Nanoscience has been widely used in a number of areas such as chemistry, biology, and physics.

2) An inch is ten thousand times of one nanometre.

3) The microscopes that can be used to examine atoms cost a vast amount of money.

4) Endowing the materials with better strength and less weight belongs to one of the applications of nanotechnology.

任务2 **请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。**

MIT Engineers Are Teaching AI Robots to Do Household Chores

Researchers at MIT's Computer Science and Artificial Intelligence Laboratory and the University of Toronto are teaching AI robots to do household chores using a Sims inspired virtual simulator. For humans, household chores are dreary, but not particularly complex. However, it is rather complex for an AI robot to clean a glass or turn on a microwave. And if an AI robot wants to watch TV from the sofa, it must break the task down to specific steps, like walking to the TV, switching on the TV, walking to the sofa, and sitting on the sofa.

To accomplish household tasks, the researchers collected common verbal descriptions of household chores and translated them into robot friendly code. These AI house assistants were then demonstrated in a 3D simulator that was designed to replicate the interior of a house. In that way, the robot house assistants learned to make coffee, turn on the microwave, and relax on the sofa successfully. Additionally, the researchers have created a database of household tasks described through natural language, which could help some systems to carry out more complex tasks.

In the future, robot assistants could even learn through watching YouTube videos instead of stimulation videos. The researchers also want to implement a system of rewards that gives the AI robots positive feedback when they accomplish tasks correctly. In the future, robot assistants might be able to learn and carry out complex multi-step tasks just by watching a human accomplish them.

According to Xavier Puig, lead author of the research, we can imagine a setting where robots are assisting with chores at home and can eventually anticipate personalised wants and needs, even impending action. He believes that could be especially helpful as an assistive technology for the elderly, or those who may have limited mobility.

Up to now, the team's AI agent has already learned to execute 1,000 separate sets of actions in eight different scenes, including the living room, the kitchen, the dining room, the bedroom, the home office, etc.

1 请判断下列表述是否在文章中出现。在出现的表述后画√，没有出现的表述后画×。

1) the example of instructions that a common robot takes in order to watch TV from the sofa

2) the appearance of the 3D simulator used in the robots

3) problems that need to be addressed in order to improve the robots' performances

4) different tasks that the team's AI model can perform

2 Do the following statements agree with the claims of the writer in the passage?

Write

YES *if the statement agrees with the claims of the writer*

NO *if the statement contradicts the claims of the writer*

NOT GIVEN *if it is impossible to say what the writer thinks about this*

1) Housework is similar for humans and robots in terms of its complexity.

2) The descriptions of housework need to be gathered and translated into computer code to make sure the robots can perform the mission precisely.

3) The 3D virtual home simulator was meant to show the internal layout of the house.

4) Robots now can receive positive feedback when they complete the task well so that they can improve their own actions.

5) Xavier Puig has pointed out the vast market of personalised robots in retail shops and factories.

4 课后练习

New Materials Are Powering the Battery Revolution

Almost all the mobile phones, which play a significant role in everybody's life, are powered by

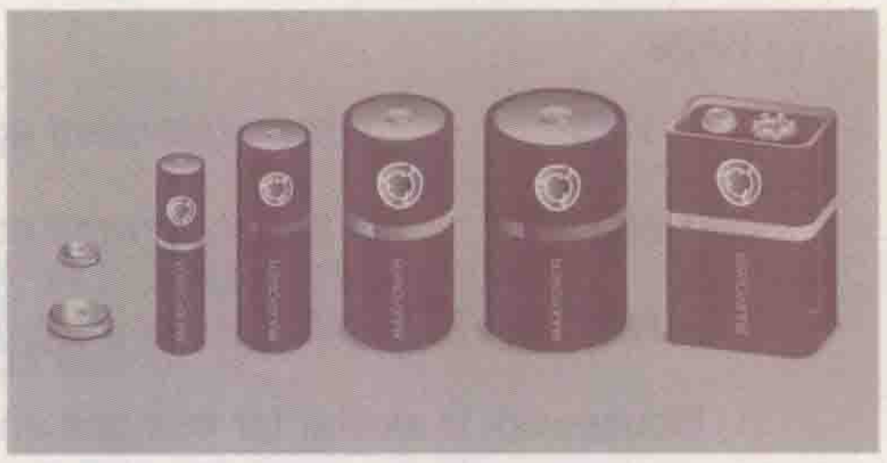
rechargeable lithium-ion batteries. Lithium-ion batteries are the single most important component enabling the mobile phone revolution of the past few decades. None of those mobile phones would be attractive to users if they don't have enough power to last at least several hours.

Lithium-ion batteries are also useful in larger applications, like electric vehicles and smart-grid energy storage systems. There is a demand for high-capacity batteries that won't catch fire or explode. And many people have dreamed of smaller, lighter batteries that charge in minutes — or even seconds — yet store enough energy to power a device for days. To meet people's demand, researchers are seeking new and better materials to improve lithium-ion batteries.

Some researchers have more adventurous ideas. They believe cars and grid-storage systems would be even better if they could be discharged and recharged tens of thousands of times over many years, or even decades. Besides, they suppose maintenance technicians and customers would love batteries that could monitor themselves and send alerts if they were damaged or no longer functioning at peak performance — or even were able to fix themselves. In addition, they dream of dual-purpose batteries integrated into the structure of an item, helping to shape the form of a smartphone, car or building while also powering the item. As long as the scientists and engineers become more skilful at controlling and handling matters at the scale of individual atoms, all that may become possible.



For the most part, advances in energy storage will rely on the continuing development of materials science, pushing the limits of performance of existing battery materials and developing entirely new battery structures and compositions.



The battery industry has been working to reduce the cost of lithium-ion batteries by replacing the expensive cobalt with other cheaper metals. This would also reduce the human costs of these batteries, because many cobalt mines in Africa use child labour.

Researchers are looking for ways to replace the cobalt-containing materials with cathodes made mostly of nickel. Eventually they may be able to replace the nickel with manganese. Each of those metals is cheaper, more abundant and safer to work with than its predecessor.

Researchers also intend to replace the lithium-ions that move between the two electrodes with ions and electrolytes that may be cheaper and potentially safer, like those based on sodium, magnesium, zinc or aluminium. There are possibilities of using two-dimensional materials, essentially extremely thin sheets of substances with useful electronic properties. Graphene is perhaps the best-known of these — a sheet of carbon is just one atom thick.

Do the following statements agree with the claims of the writer in the passage?

Write

YES *if the statement agrees with the claims of the writer*

NO *if the statement contradicts the claims of the writer*

NOT GIVEN *if it is impossible to say what the writer thinks about this*

1 The use of rechargeable batteries is the most essential factor in increasing the popularity of mobile phones.

2 The only expectation consumers have for batteries is their capacity within one charge.

3 Power-alerting system and self-repair function are some of the directions in which batteries can be improved.

4 Biochemistry is the only hope that scientists can rely on to reform the current battery materials.

5 According to researchers, cobalt exceeds other metals in every aspect except for its durability.

6 Graphene might cost too much compared with other choices of materials.

Speaking

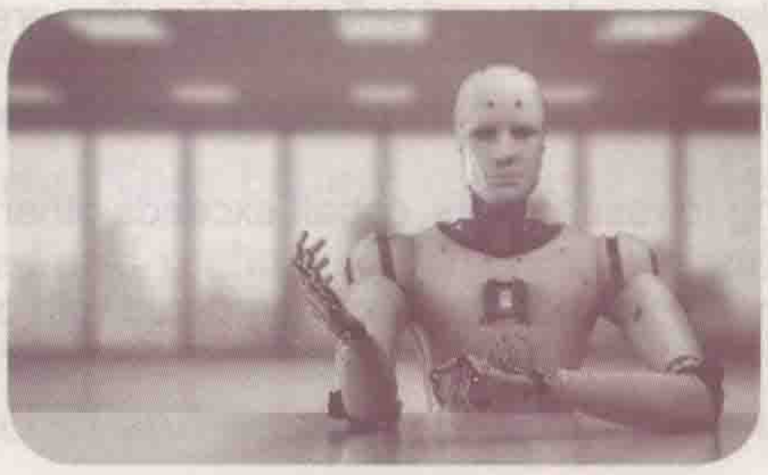
1 词汇基础

1.1 请从方框中选择正确的单词或短语填入相应的图片下方。

robot	smartphone	laptop	Wi-Fi connection



1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____

1.2 请从优缺点和参与频率两个方面谈论以下活动。

playing online games	sending e-mails	chatting online
searching for information	watching online movies	

2 能力培养

2.1 语法训练——插入语

插入语是一种独立成分。在语义上，插入语表明了说话人所持的态度或对所说内容的补充解释。如果将插入语去掉，句子在结构上仍然是完整的。插入语的使用能让语言更准确、更具说服力。插入语分为单词插入语、短语插入语和句子插入语三种。

❶ 单词插入语

单词插入语多为副词，可用于句首、句中和句尾。

- I don't often write letters. **Instead**, I send e-mails. 我不经常写信，而是发送电子邮件。

- I can, **however**, send short text messages to my friends when I'm busy.
  不过，当我忙的时候，我可以给我的朋友们发短信。
- The intelligent speaker is a little bit heavy. I can manage it, **though**. 智能扬声器有点重，不过我拿得动。

❷ 短语插入语

短语插入语通常用于句首或句中。

- **By the way**, when did you buy your new mobile phone? 顺便问一下，你什么时候买的新手机?
- The Internet can be used to improve relationships. **In other words**, we can use the Internet to help us communicate with others.
  互联网可以用来改善人际关系，换句话说，我们可以通过网络来帮助我们与他人进行沟通。
- I do, **for example**, chat online quite frequently with my friends using instant messengers.
  例如，我确实相当频繁地使用即时通信工具和朋友们在线聊天。

❸ 句子插入语

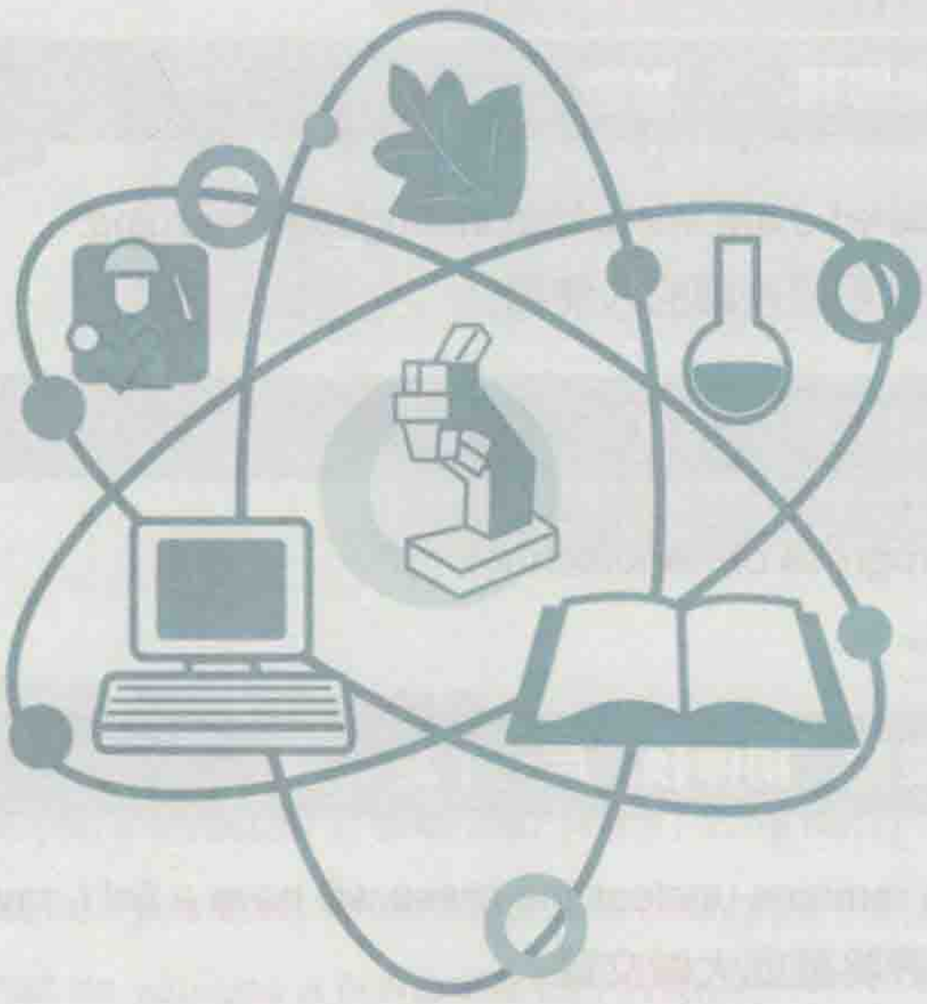
句子插入语通常用于句中。

- This is the last chance, **I am afraid**, that you can buy interactive toys.
  恐怕这是你能买到互动玩具的最后一次机会了。
- This professor, **I believe**, is the best one to win this prize.
  我相信这位教授是这一奖项的最佳人选。
- As for the function of the machine, **as far as I know**, the two sides did not touch upon the issue.
  至于这台机器的功能，据我了解，双方还没有讨论过这个问题。

Tips

常用的插入语还包括：
in another word 换句话说；that is to say 也就是说；believe it or not 信不信由你；I believe 我相信；I suppose / guess 我猜；as far as I remember 我记得；do you suppose 你认为。

练习 **请用已学词汇和语法描述下列图片所展示的话题。**



Example

Science, particularly natural science, covers a wide range of subjects. Among these subjects showed in the pictures, computer science...

2.2 发音训练——不完全爆破 2

第四单元已经提到爆破音相邻时的发音规则，本单元主要介绍六个爆破音常见的组合规律。

请听录音，跟读模仿以下例句，纠正自己的发音。

/p/+/p/：两个辅音/p/相邻时，前一个不发音，稍停顿，后一个发/p/音

With the help of new technology, this wine delivers characters of ripe pears.
在新技术的帮助下，这款酒呈现出成熟梨子的口味。

/p/+/b/：辅音/p/后接/b/时，/p/不发音，稍停顿，/b/发音

The new technology revolution will lose easily, just like the soap bubble.
新技术革命就像肥皂泡一样，很容易破灭。

/b/+/b/：两个辅音/b/相邻时，前一个不发音，稍停顿，后一个发/b/音

Rub briskly up and down for one minute. The friction produces heat.
上下快速摩擦一分钟，摩擦产生热量。

/b/+/d/：辅音/b/后接/d/时，/b/不发音，稍停顿，/d/发音

The cab driver drove between the airport and downtown more than eight times in one day.
那个出租车司机每天至少在市区和机场之间来回八次。

/t/+/p/：辅音/t/后接/p/时，/t/不发音，稍停顿，/p/发音

You can remove the wet paint from carpets with this hi-tech product.
你可以用这种高科技产品去除地毯上的湿油漆。

/t/+/b/：辅音/t/后接/b/时，/t/不发音，稍停顿，/b/发音

This application is like a pocket book for people who are interested in language learning.
这个应用程序就像口袋书一样，可供对语言学习感兴趣的人使用。

/d/+/t/：辅音/d/后接/t/时，/d/不发音，稍停顿，/t/发音

It might be a good time to examine the new progress of nanotechnology.
这可能是一个检测纳米技术新进展的好时机。

/d/+/d/：两个辅音/d/相邻时，前一个不发音，稍停顿，后一个发/d/音

If the developing trend of artificial intelligence remains unclear, the press will have a field day.
如果人工智能的发展趋势持续不明确，新闻界将就此大做文章。

/k/+/b/：辅音/k/后接/b/时，/k/不发音，稍停顿，/b/发音

A black box records all the details of each flight and is useful for finding out the cause of an accident.
黑匣子记录了每班航班的所有详细资料，并有助于查明事故的原因。

/k/+/g/：辅音/k/后接/g/时，/k/不发音，稍停顿，/g/发音

Now the car park gate control system has been very advanced.
现在的停车场门禁系统已经非常先进了。

/g/+/d/：辅音/g/后接/d/时，/g/不发音，稍停顿，/d/发音

Game companies keep incorporating servers and open new servers, forcing players to dig down to buy the equipment of the game.
游戏公司不断合并服务器并开辟新的服务器，迫使玩家掏腰包购买游戏装备。

/g/+/k/：辅音/g/后接/k/时，/g/不发音，稍停顿，/k/发音

Look! The newly-designed airplane looks like a big kite flying around the sky.
快看！这种新设计的飞机看起来像一个巨大的风筝在天上飞来飞去。

3 话题讲解

3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——科技

在当今的数字化时代，人们已经越来越离不开电子设备了。电脑和手机已成为每个人的生活必需品，电子产品的盛行体现了当今时代对于数字科技的需求。



是的。从互联网的大范围普及开始，越来越多的数字产品和电子产品进入人们的生活。



另一个常被拿来讨论的话题就是电子邮件和信件。电子邮件已经逐渐取代书信，成为我们生活和工作中常用的通信方式。电子邮件成本低、传送快，能够有效提升沟通效率。



但是，还有些人保持着写信这一传统的沟通方式，觉得这样更有情怀，更能传递感情。

考题重现 请回答以下问题。

- Are you interested in science? [Why / Why not?]
- What do you think is the most interesting part of science? [Why?]
- What do you use a computer for? [Why?]
- Do you often write letters or e-mails? [Why / Why not?]



话题表达

scientific principles and concepts 科学原理与概念

memorise formulas 记住公式

understand complex theories 理解复杂的理论

convenient and efficient 方便的、高效的

attachments 附件

search for valuable data 搜寻有价值的资料

be installed on the mobile phone 安装在手机上

load digital map 加载数字地图

keep track of health condition 追踪健康状况

electronic devices 电子设备

When I was younger, I wasn't quite interested in... 当我年轻的时候，我对……不太感兴趣。

Nevertheless, as I grew older, I began to realise that... 然而，随着年龄的增长，我开始意识到……

A fascinating part of science is... 科学令人着迷的部分是……

Computers provide a useful tool for me to... 电脑为我提供了一个有用的工具去……

E-mail accounts are usually free and can be obtained easily, whereas... 电子邮件账户一般是免费的，也很容易获取，然而……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

When I was younger, I wasn't quite interested in science, including biology, physics, and computer science. Nevertheless, as I grew older, I began to realise that science plays a key role in our lives. A fascinating part of science is that it updates constantly over time, and inventors have made our lives more convenient and efficient. As an example, computers provide a useful tool for me to chat with my family members and friends online despite the distance between us. I can also send e-mails to them with videos or photos as attachments.

3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——科技

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

Describe an electronic item you own / owned.

You should say:

what the item is / was

how much it costs / cost

how often you use / used it

and explain whether you are / were satisfied with it.

思路解析与拓展



与科技产品有关的话题，最简单的就是谈论我们经常使用的笔记本电脑、手机等。

是的，可以介绍它的外观设计、使用效果、待机时间等。





也可以聊一聊这些产品的主要功能，比如下载文件、浏览网页、娱乐交流等。

最后还可以谈谈使用感受，例如获取信息十分方便。也可以列举它们带来的一些问题，比如个人信息可能会泄漏。



话题表达

the most viable option 最可行的选择

use smartphones 使用智能手机

new version 新版本

download the software 下载软件

register an account 注册一个账号

personal profile photo 个人资料头像

save files 保存文件

read online materials 阅读在线材料

be addicted to 对……上瘾，沉溺于……

keep up with the times 跟上时代

I think it is quite reasonable for... 我认为……是很合理的。

Its design is extremely...and... 它的设计非常……，而且……

I use my laptop on a daily basis for... 我每天都用笔记本电脑做……

The Internet allows us to...at home. 网络让我们可以在家……

People should definitely not spend too much time in front of a computer because... 人们绝对不应该花太多的时间在电脑前，因为……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

Last year, my father bought me a laptop and so far I am very pleased with it. It cost my parents quite a fortune. But I think the price is quite reasonable for a nice notebook computer.

Its design is extremely trendy. I can carry it wherever I go since it's quite slim and light. The battery is so long-lasting that I can keep my computer on for more than 6 hours per charge. It is an enjoyable experience to work on it because the keyboard is user-friendly.

I use my laptop on a daily basis for different purposes. For example, I often get on the Internet to do some research for my homework. I type in essays and sometimes draw charts. I also use my laptop for entertainment. Music and movies can be downloaded from the Internet, and my roommates and I frequently get together to watch a film on my computer.

It would be very hard for me to live without a computer nowadays. My laptop has become an essential part of my daily routine. Whenever I get home, I turn it on right away.

4 课后练习

4.1 请了解互联网可能导致的风险并思考原因。

Internet addiction	excessive Internet use that interferes with daily life
Identity theft	any crime in which someone steals personal information about or belonging to another person, and uses this information to deceive other people and get money or goods
Cyberbullying	the activity of using messages on social networking sites, e-mails, text messages, etc to frighten or upset someone

4.2 请回答以下问题。

- Which do you write more often, e-mails or handwritten letters?
- Is your mobile phone important / useful for you in your daily life? [Why / Why not?]
- Describe a mobile phone you own / owned.

  You should say:

  what the brand is / was

  how much it costs / cost

  what is / was special about it

  and explain whether you would buy it again if it were broken.

- Describe an App (on a mobile phone / tablet) which you find very useful.

  You should say:

  what the App is

  how long you have had this App

  how easy it is to use

  and explain why you think this App very useful.

Writing

1 词汇基础

1.1 请根据中文提示，将下列单词补充完整。

1 创新 i_n_v_t_o_　2 电话 p_o_e　3 注意力 a_ _e_ti_n

4 信息 in_or_a_ _on　5 技术 te_h_ _lo_y　6 短信，消息 m_s_ _ge

7 改变 c_a_g_　8 好交际的 s_c_a_ _e

1.2 请使用1.1中的单词填空，完成句子。

1 Answering a _____ during a theatre performance is rude.

2 We have developed new ways of spelling in order to make the _____ short for texting.

3 Use this magical power of invention and _____ to change the lives of people in poverty.

4 Children are competing with phones, pads and computers for their parents' _____.

5 Search engines provide access to all the world's _____.

6 The growing development of _____ allows people to work from home.

2 能力培养

2.1 词汇表达

❶ 核心单词及其派生词

develop /dɪ'veləp/ *v.* 发展

development /dɪ'veləpmənt/ *n.* 发展

advance /əd'vɑ:ns/ *n.* 进步 *v.* 前进

advancement /əd'vɑ:nsmənt/ *n.* 进步

science /'saɪəns/ *n.* 科学

scientific /ˌsaɪən'tɪfɪk/ *adj.* 科学的

discover /dɪ'skʌvə(r)/ *v.* 发现

discovery /dɪ'skʌvəri/ *n.* 发现

invent /ɪn'vent/ *v.* 发明

invention /ɪn'venʃn/ *n.* 发明

convenient /kən'vi:niənt/ *adj.* 方便的

convenience /kən'vi:niəns/ *n.* 方便

distract /dɪ'strækt/ *v.* 使分心

distraction /dɪ'strækʃn/ *n.* 分散注意力的事物

improve /ɪm'pru:v/ *v.* 提高，改进

improvement /ɪm'pru:vmənt/ *n.* 提高，改进

automatic /ˌɔ:tə'mætɪk/ *adj.* 自动的

automation /ˌɔ:tə'meɪʃn/ *n.* 自动化

apply /ə'plaɪ/ *v.* 申请；应用

application /ˌæplɪ'keɪʃn/ *n.* 申请；应用

❷ 常用短语

cutting-edge technology 尖端的技术

medical research 医学研究

scientific discovery 科学发现

scientific knowledge 科学知识

technological innovations 科技创新

technological inventions 科技发明

health protection 健康保障

improve work efficiency 提高工作效率

obtain information in various ways 通过各种方式获得信息

promote communication 推动交流

be detached from reality 与现实隔绝

harmful information 有害信息

increasing work pressure 不断增加的工作压力

information explosion 信息爆炸

invade one's privacy 侵犯个人隐私

security issue 安全问题

outdoor activities 户外活动

quality family time 珍贵的家庭时光

weaken eyesight 使视力下降

access the Internet 上网

electronic book 电子书

literacy level 文化水平

household appliance 家用电器

labour-saving machinery 节约人力的机器

mobile phone 移动电话

online chatting 网络聊天

post short videos online 在网上发布短视频

genetically modified technique 转基因技术

organ transplantation 器官移植

❸ 写作例句

...be a heated topic ……是一个热门话题

- Whether cloning technology should be prohibited **is a heated topic**.

克隆技术是否应该被禁止是一个热门话题。

...relieve one's academic / financial / psychological burden ……减轻某人的学业 / 经济 / 心理负担

- Taking outdoor activities can **relieve the teenagers' academic burden**.
  参加户外活动可以缓解青少年的学业负担。

remove barriers to... 为……消除障碍

- The extensive use of the Internet can help business people **remove** geographical **barriers to** communication over a long distance. 网络的广泛应用可以为商务人士远距离交流消除地理障碍。

less time-consuming and more economical 既省时间又省钱

- The invention of the underground makes the daily commuting of working people **less time-consuming and more economical**. 地铁的发明使得上班族的日常通勤变得既省时间又省钱。

练习 **请从方框中选择正确的短语填空，完成句子。**

text message	online chatting	literacy levels
a mobile phone	household appliances	posting short videos on the Internet

1 Many chores like washing the dishes and sweeping the floor are now replaced by _____.

2 Lisa has sent a _____ to her husband telling him not to worry.

3 Today, many Chinese netizens choose to share their lives with others by _____.

4 The short message has been blamed for damaging the English language and even affecting _____.

5 The accessories of _____ are able to be recycled, including circuit boards, batteries and chargers.

6 The development of _____ leads to young people's fewer social activities and even problems of communicating with others in the real world.

2.2 语法重点

五种基本句型总结

❶ 主语 + 谓语

Robots	can work	around the clock.
主语	谓语	状语

译文：机器人可以夜以继日地工作。

❷ 主语 + 系动词 + 表语

That woman	remained	silent.
主语	系动词	表语

译文：那个女人依然默不作声。

❸ 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语

Technology	is changing	our life and the natural environment.
主语	谓语	宾语

译文：科技正在改变我们的生活和自然环境。

Some scientists	predict	that robots may someday develop a personality.
主语	谓语	宾语

译文：一些科学家预测，机器人有一天可能会进化出性格。

❹ 主语 + 谓语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语

The car engineers	promised	us	a flying car.
主语	谓语	间接宾语	直接宾语

译文：汽车工程师承诺给我们一辆会飞的汽车。

(= The car engineers promised a flying car to us.)

The application of technology	offers	human beings	a more convenient life.
主语	谓语	间接宾语	直接宾语

译文：科技的应用为人类提供了更便捷的生活。

(= The application of technology offers a more convenient life to human beings.)

❺ 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语 + 宾语补足语

The advance of e-books	makes	reading	more convenient and eco-friendly.
主语	谓语	宾语	宾语补足语

译文：电子书的发展使阅读变得更加便捷和环保。

The worldwide network	allows	us	to meet our families and friends	any time online.
主语	谓语	宾语	宾语补足语	状语

译文：全球互联网络让我们可以随时与家人和朋友在线上见面。

Many gadgets	can help	us	save time	at home.
主语	谓语	宾语	宾语补足语	状语

译文：许多小玩意儿可以帮助我们在家里节省时间。

The rapid development of communication technology	enables	children in remote areas	to get access to more educational resources.
主语	谓语	宾语	宾语补足语

译文：通信技术的快速发展使偏远地区的儿童得到了更多的教育资源。

Some	consider	the dumped computer hardware	as a source of pollution.
主语	谓语	宾语	宾语补足语

译文：有人认为废弃的计算机硬件是一种污染源。

练习 **请写出下列简单句的类型及画线部分在句中所作的成分。**

1 Mobile phones allow us <u>to quickly share important news</u>. _____ _____

2 Sometimes, the Internet <u>offers</u> people a new channel to commit crimes. _____ _____

3 Computer science is <u>a subject</u>. _____ _____

4 <u>Human beings</u> live on nature instead of computers. _____ _____

5 Modern computer technology created <u>new jobs</u> with decent salary. _____ _____

2.3 衔接方式

❶ personally

通常用在句首，后面用逗号隔开，表示“就我个人而言”。

- **Personally**, I think the benefits of the research and development of the robots outweigh its disadvantages. 就我个人而言，研发机器人的利大于弊。

❷ in my opinion

常用在句首或句中，后面用逗号隔开，表示“我认为，在我看来”。

- **In my opinion**, Internet addiction will have a destroying effect on teenagers' physical and mental health. 在我看来，染上网瘾会对青少年的身心健康造成破坏性的影响。

❸ for my part

常用在句首，后面用逗号隔开，表示“就我而言，对我来说”。

- **For my part**, people should spare time to put electronic devices away and have a gathering with families and friends. 就我而言，人们应该抽出时间把电子设备收起来，与家人和朋友相聚。

❹ from my perspective

常用在句首，后面用逗号隔开，表示“在我看来，从我的角度来看”。

- **From my perspective**, the development of medical research and treatment will prolong the average life span of human beings. 在我看来，医学研究和治疗的发展将延长人类的平均寿命。

❺ from my point of view

常用在句首，后面用逗号隔开，表示“依我之见，在我看来”。

- **From my point of view**, spending a long time on electronic screens will lead to a quick fall in our eyesight. 在我看来，长时间看电子屏幕会使我们的视力迅速下降。

❻ I firmly believe that...

that引导的宾语从句作谓语动词believe的宾语，表示“我坚信……”。

- **I firmly believe that** robots can never replace humans. 我坚信机器人永远无法取代人类。

练习 请从方框中选择适合的表达观点的句子与相应的题目相匹配。

A In my opinion, the relentless development of new technology and industries has had a negative impact on the environment.

B From my point of view, typing messages frequently may lead teenagers to forget how to write the words.

C Personally, I believe online shopping has its merits.

D For my part, the process of shopping in stores is enjoyable and can bring great relief.

1 Developments of technology are causing environmental problems. Do you agree? _____

2 Some people say that communication by using computers and phones will have negative effects on young people's writing and reading skills. Do you agree? _____

3 Online shopping is replacing shopping in stores. Do you think this is a positive or negative development? _____

3 题型讲解

3.1 科技类话题

雅思写作大作文的主体段通常包含以下几个部分：

idea	观点
explanation	解释观点
further explanation / example	进一步解释 / 举例
detail / result of the example	细节 / 举例的结果
additional information	补充信息
transition	转折
comparison	对比
conclusion	结论

请以下面的题目为例，学习大作文主体段的写作。

> ***When a country develops its technology, the traditional skills and ways of life die out. It is pointless to keep them alive. To what extent do you agree or disagree with this opinion?***
>
> Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

❶ 题型分析

该题目为“同意或不同意”题型，中心话题为：保持传统技能和生活方式是否有意义。

不同意：保持传统技能和生活方式有意义

同意：保持传统无意义，享受科技成果

❷ 段落组织

主体段1 不同意

idea	Opponents argue that it is still essential to retain the traditional skills and ways of life.
explanation	Traditional ways of life have a close relationship with the nature. This relationship ensures a high quality of life, which means breathing fresh air and enjoying delightful views.
further explanation	Essentially, man is a hunter, gatherer and farmer, and our lives depend on the nature.
comparison	As the rapid urbanisation and modernisation have changed our traditional ways of life with machines and new technological devices, a variety of health problems are growing among modern citizens, such as depression.
conclusion	Therefore, preserving traditional ways of life and human nature is beneficial for our health.

观点	反对者认为，有必要保持传统的技能和生活方式。
解释观点	传统的生活方式与自然保持了密切关系。这种关系保证了高质量的生活，这意味着人们可以呼吸新鲜的空气，陶醉于令人愉快的景色。
进一步解释	从本质上说，人类是狩猎者、采集者和农民，我们的生活依赖于大自然。
对比	随着城市化和现代化步伐的加快，机器和新技术设备改变了我们传统的生活方式，现代人出现了各种各样的健康问题，比如抑郁症。
结论	因此，保持传统的生活方式和人类天性对我们的健康是有益的。

主体段 2 同意

idea	However, technology indeed frees human beings from the dull and sometimes even dangerous labour work in the past.
explanation	Various household appliances free people largely from boring household chores.
further explanation	Thus, they have more time to engage in many interesting activities, which can develop their personal interests or are helpful in strengthening family ties.
additional information	Scientific innovation and advanced technology have made it possible for the machines to replace most repetitive labour work and work in dangerous environment.
conclusion	It is apparent that technology has improved our quality of life and social well-being.
观点	然而，技术确实使人类从过去枯燥的，有时甚至危险的劳动中解放出来。
解释观点	各种家用电器使人们在很大程度上摆脱了单调的家务劳动。
进一步解释	因此，他们有更多的时间参加许多有趣的活动，这些活动可以发展他们的个人兴趣或有助于加强家庭关系。
补充信息	科学创新和先进技术使机器取代了大多数的重复劳动和危险环境中的工作。
结论	显然，科技提高了我们的生活质量和社会福利。

练习 **请根据题目，判断所给范文的两个主体段中句子的作用。**

Intelligent machines such as robots are widely applied to take the place of human beings. Please discuss the advantages and disadvantages.

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

主体段1 优点

The benefits brought by robots are obvious and hard to ignore.	1 _____
The application of robots in industry can improve the productivity noticeably.	2 _____
For example, during the process of manufacturing, the boring and repetitive work can be done by machines at a higher speed.	3 _____
Thus humans are freed to do more complex and fulfilling tasks.	4 _____
Since robots can work in any situation, they can help us in many aspects.	5 _____

主体段2 缺点

However, we cannot deny that there are some disadvantages of robots.	6 _____
Designed by human beings, robots can only carry out the tasks assigned to them.	7 _____
That means, all the robots and other intelligent machines must follow the instructions and pre-set programming by human beings.	8 _____
If there is something wrong with the programmes, the robots will become problematic.	9 _____
For this reason, we can say that robots cannot be operated without their designers.	10 _____

3.2 柱状图 1

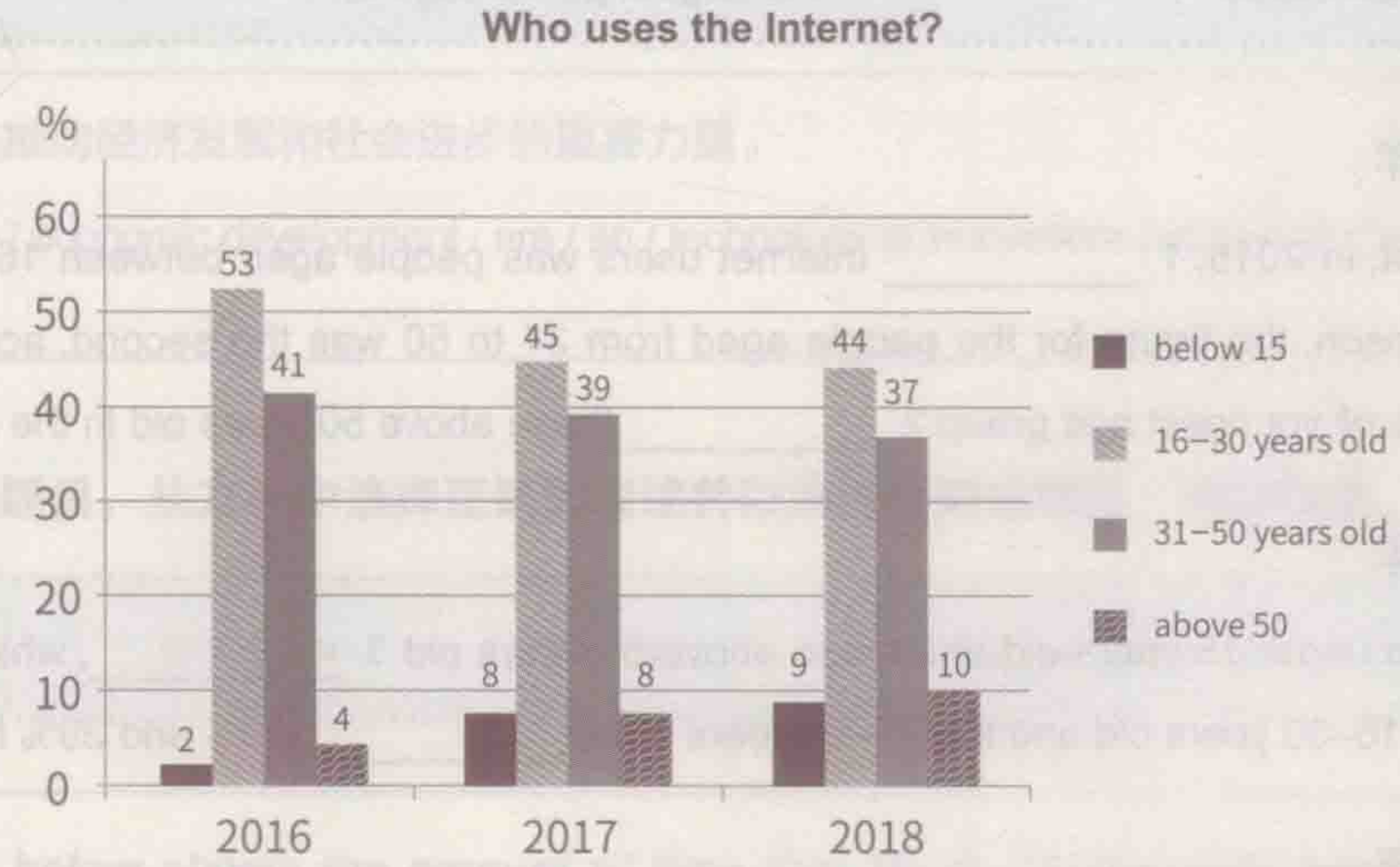
开始写作之前，我们首先需要观察图表，通过以下三个方面来组织文章。

1. 图表是关于什么的？最明显的特点是什么？由此进行图表介绍和综合概述。
2. 图表是否有时间范围？如果有，则可以描述时间跨度上的变化，并且需要根据时间选用合适的时态进行描述。
3. 如何将信息分类？根据合理的分类方式，分段描述图表所呈现的信息。

请以下面的题目为例，阅读所给范文，尝试回答以上几个问题，并注意其中不同的时间表达方式。

The graph shows Internet usage by age group in a city from 2016 to 2018.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.



开头段

The bar chart gives information about the percentage of people using the Internet in different age groups from 2016 to 2018. Overall, it is clear that the vast majority of people accessing the Internet ranged from 16 to 50 while Internet users aged below 15 and above 50 accounted for largely smaller proportions.

该柱状图提供了从2016年到2018年不同年龄段的人上网所占的比例。总体来说，16岁至50岁的互联网使用者占绝大多数，而15岁以下及50岁以上的互联网使用者所占比例则明显较低。

主体段1 2016年

In 2016, the percentage of users at the age of 16–30 who gained access to the Internet was the highest, taking up 53% compared to 41% of the 31–50 age group. Meanwhile, the proportion of children under 15 who used Internet was the lowest, at exactly 2%. There was only 4% of the people above 50 accessing the Internet.

2016年，16岁至30岁的人上网比例最高，达到53%；相比而言，31岁至50岁的网民比例为41%。同时，15岁以下的儿童使用互联网的比例是最低的，只有2%。50岁以上的人中，只有4%的人上网。

主体段2 变化及终点

Over the following 2 years, however, there was a steady decline in both 16–30 and 31–50 age groups. The figures for both age groups dropped to 44% and 37% respectively in 2018. Moreover, the rate of children below 15 rose slightly to 9% in 2018. Similarly, the people above 50 enjoyed a 6% increase in the percentage of Internet users.

然而，在接下来的两年里，16岁至30岁和31岁至50岁上网的人群都在稳步下降。2018年，这两个年龄段的数据分别下降到44%和37%。此外，15岁以下的网民比例在2018年小幅上升至9%。同样，50岁以上人群的互联网用户比例也增长了6%。

练习 **请根据以上题目，从方框中选择正确的表述补全下列范文的主体段。**

was 2% lower than	had the same percentage	reaching
a further decrease	the largest percentage of	declined to

主体段1 2016年

It is obvious that, in 2016, 1 _____ Internet users was people aged between 16 and 30, standing at 53%. In comparison, the figure for the people aged from 31 to 50 was the second, accounting for 41%. In addition, the rate of youngest age group 2 _____ those above 50 years old in the usage of Internet.

主体段2 2017年

In 2017, children under 15 years old and those above 50 years old 3 _____, which was 8%, whereas the data for the 16–30 years old and the 31–50 years old 4 _____ 45% and 39% respectively.

主体段3 2018年

In the next year, there was 5 _____ in the figures for the 31–50 and 16–30 age groups, to 44% and 37% respectively. However, the percentage of Internet users aged below 15 and over 50 saw a rise, 6 _____ 9% and 10% respectively.

4 课后练习

4.1 请根据中文提示，将所给英文表达重新排序，组成一个语义完整的句子。

1 长时间盯着电脑或者手机以及近距离看电视可能会使你的视力下降。

the computer / really close / weaken your eyesight / or the mobile phone / and / for hours / may / staring at / watching TV

2 技术巨头收集和处理客户数据，以改善客户体验。

collect and process / technological giants / customer experience / to improve / customer data

3 由于没有对互联网使用的有效限制，数以百万计的年轻人成了犯罪分子的潜在目标。

without / millions of / effective restrictions / young people / to criminals / are exposed potentially / on Internet usage

4 在信息爆炸的时代，能整理大量信息并从中找出所需信息，这本身就是财富。

it is wealth / and sort out / in the age of / masses of sources / to sort through / what you need / itself / information explosion

5 这些先进的技术工具帮助我们消除了有效沟通中的距离障碍。

these advanced / in / have helped us / technical tools / of distance / effective communication / eliminate the barriers

6 科技创新是推动经济发展和社会进步的重要力量。

driving force / economic development / are / an / technological innovations / important / and social progress / for

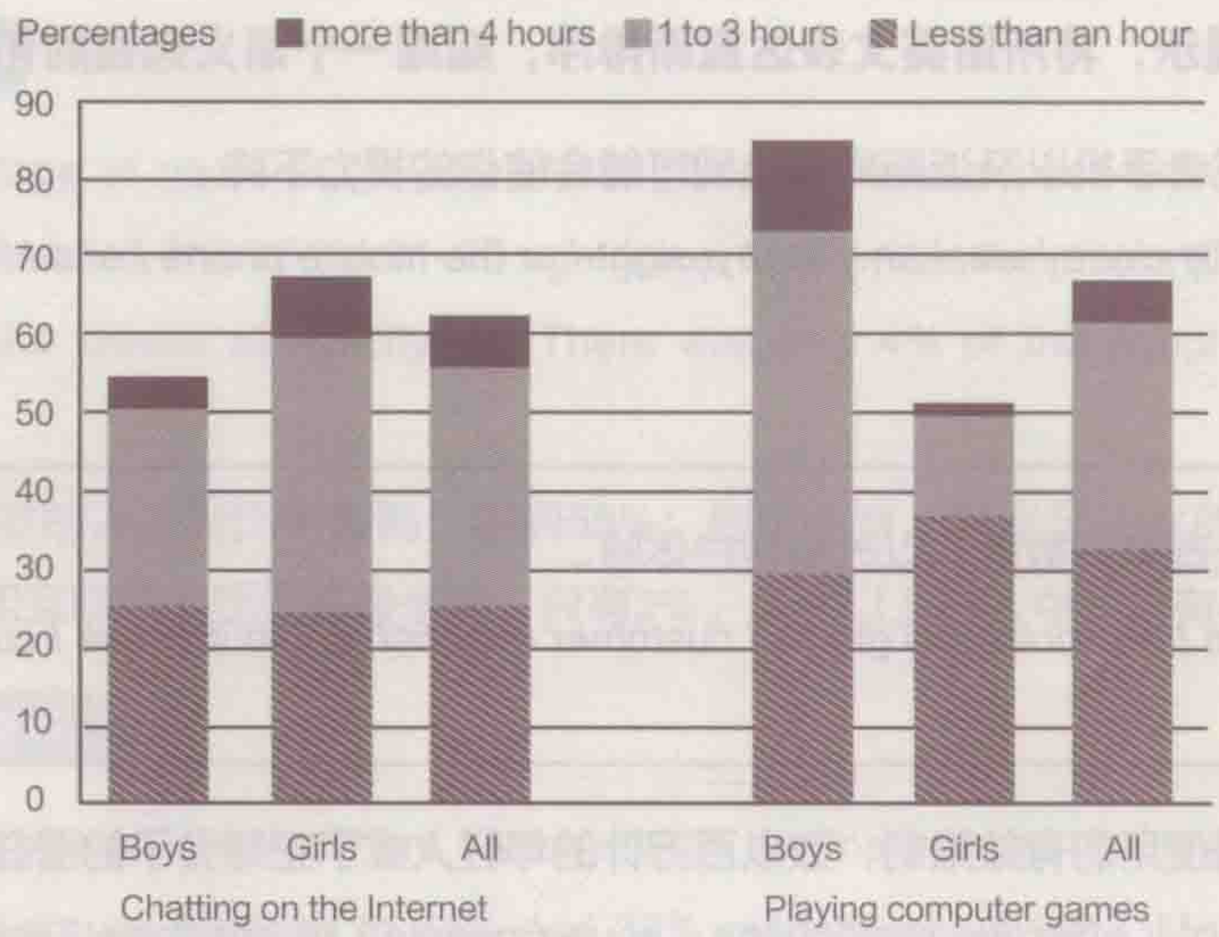
4.2 请根据题目，从方框中选择正确的表述并以其正确形式填空，完成短文。

whereas	moreover	preferred	made online conversation	by contrast

The chart below shows the amount of time that 10- to 15-year-olds spend chatting on the Internet and playing computer games on an average school day in the UK.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

The percentage of time that 10- to 15-year-olds spend chatting on the Internet and playing games on an average school day in the UK



The chart shows how much time was spent chatting on the Internet and playing computer games by 10- to 15-year-olds on an average day in the UK.

It is noticeable that more girls spent time chatting on the Internet than boys, 1 _____ there are far more boys spending their time on computer games compared with girls.

Clearly, the 10- to 15-year-old boys 2 _____ playing computer games to chatting online. About 85% of boys played computer games while the percentage was only about 55% for chatting online. 3 _____, more than 40% of boys played computer games between 1 to 3 hours and about 10% of boys said that they spent more than 4 hours on this.

4 _____, chatting online was more popular among girls than playing computer games. About 68% of girls from 10 to 15 years old 5 _____ per day compared with roughly 50% of girls playing computer games. In addition, about 35% of girls spent 1 to 3 hours chatting on the Internet.

Audio Scripts

Unit 1 Daily Necessities

1.1

Amanda: Mike, what do you care about most when you go shopping?

Mike: Well, it actually depends on what product I need. In most cases, lower prices would attract me, but when I buy some durable goods, like clothes, shoes or bags, I will care more about the material and comfort. What about you, Amanda?

Amanda: I agree that the material matters a lot when it comes to clothes, but I don't believe in low prices. Will you choose certain brands when shopping?

Mike: Em...sometimes, you know, some certain brands actually provide a guarantee of good quality.

Amanda: That's true. What about other factors like fashion?

Mike: Fashion always changes fast, so I don't care much about the style and colour. And I certainly won't spend money on fashionable things. I prefer simple and practical things.

Amanda: Oh, I'm different from you. I like fashion and I often buy seasonal branded clothes with my friends.

1.2

Waitress: Hi, welcome to Blue Bar & Grill.

Guest: Hi, do you have any recommended dishes?

Waitress: Oh, you definitely need to try our five-star stake, which is imported from Australia. The meat is so soft and juicy.

Guest: OK, two please. One is medium rare and the other is medium. And what choices do we have for starters?

Waitress: We have pumpkin soup, selected cheese and smoked ham. Which one do you prefer?

Guest: I'd like one soup and selected cheese for my friend, please.

Waitress: Sure. Would you like to order your dessert as well?

Guest: Sure. Is there any cake?

Waitress: The chocolate cake is the most popular dessert in our restaurant. Would you like to try?

Guest: Yes, please. And two cups of house wine, thanks!

1.3

1

Woman: Hi, can I help you?

Boy: Yes, how much are these books?

Woman: Let me check. They're 23 pounds.

Boy: Can I get the student discount?

Woman: Can you show me your student card?

Boy: Sure.

2

Girl: Sorry, can we have the bill please?

Waiter: Sure, here you are.

Girl: Can you check it again? We didn't order the fish.

Waiter: Sorry, please wait a minute. I'll check with the kitchen.

Girl: OK.

3

Boy: Mum, I'd like a new bike. The one I use now is broken, but I have to go to school after the summer holiday.

Woman: OK. It's dangerous to ride your old one. Just pick the one you like.

Boy: Thanks, mum! Can I buy this one? It's the latest model.

Woman: That's too expensive. How about this one? It's cheaper and it looks cool.

Boy: Fine. I'll take this one.

4

Girl: What's the first thing for us to do on the list?

Boy: Let me see...it's dairy products. We don't have any milk now.

Girl: OK. Take these two bottles. Do we still have eggs?

Boy: Emm...I don't think so.

Girl: So I will buy a box of them.

Boy: You can buy two boxes. There is a sale.

Girl: Sure.

1.4

Maria: Judy, would you like to go shopping?

Judy: Yes! My fridge is empty. I really need to fill it and I've prepared my grocery list.

Maria: I won't buy much food because I'm on a diet. Actually, I'd like to buy some clothes and shoes.

Judy: You just bought a few clothes yesterday! I think they must be your daily necessities.

Maria: Yes, they are. Besides food, what's your daily necessities?

Judy: Drinks, especially water.

Maria: OK, is there anything more important than food and drinks? How about house and furniture?

Judy: Well, they are important, but they are not daily necessities for me. I can always rent them, so I don't have to buy them.

Maria: What do you think about vehicles?

Judy: They are quite necessary in a big city. Otherwise, you'll spend too much time on commuting.

Maria: That's true. Oh, I nearly forgot that my mobile phone was broken yesterday. I need to change it!

Judy: Yes, you are the people who can't live a single day without mobile phones.

2.3

练习1

1 Atlantic Ocean　2 date of birth　3 student newspaper
4 literature　5 guidebook　6 end of term
7 letter　8 social event

练习3

1 delicious　2 social activity　3 current
4 lack of confidence　5 education　6 development
7 famous

3.2

练习1

Chris: Hi, I'm Chris.

Amy: Oh, hi, I'm Amy. It's great to see you.

Chris: So, Amy, I'm wondering why you are interested in joining our group.

Amy: Well, to be honest, I've got a lot of junk at home, and I want to get rid of most of it. I really want to stop storing so much stuff.

Chris: Well, this group is going to be ideal then. We've all decided to buy nothing for six months. Q1

Amy: Seriously? Six months. Wow, that's a long time to go without shopping.

Chris: Well, it's not like we won't buy anything. I mean, you know, we can still buy essential goods and stuff, like food and drinks. Q2&Q3

Amy: I can't imagine doing that. What made you all decide to take part in this?

Chris: Basically, we all agreed that we were wasting too much money on shopping. Things like...clothes, mobile phones and stuff like that... Q4&Q5 We all believe that people these days have too many items that they can live without. Some decided to give up shopping and learn to enjoy life with less.

Amy: Right...but, apart from food and drinks, you need to buy other things, right? I mean, how are you able to live without the other things you need?

Chris: Well, we don't buy them. In fact, we rely on friends and family to lend things to us, Q6&Q7 or we just take things people are throwing away...or we go to second-hand stores and get things cheaply. Q8

Amy: Huh... are you sticking to your plan?

Chris: Yeah...most of the time...though it's hard to avoid buying something if we can't borrow it from someone. For example, I had to buy some new curtains for my flat, Q9 but that's the only thing I've bought.

Amy: Wow! You must have saved so much money! How many people have joined the group?

Chris: Well, at the start, we only had fifteen people, but now we have more than a hundred members all over the UK. Q10 You should sign up. You can fill out a membership form right now.

Amy: Well...thanks for asking me, but I'm not sure I can do that. I like buying things so much — especially make-up and fashionable stuff! But, anyway, keep going, you guys!

练习2

Good afternoon, everyone. Today, I plan to carry on with last week's lecture by explaining in detail about how people spend money. First off, I'd like to contrast the spending habits of different age groups. You'll probably be aware that there are big differences between the items young people and old people prefer spending money on, and how couples with children spend their money and what older people do with it. Furthermore, I'd like you to think more about why men and women spend their money in different ways. When we are done with that, I'm going to focus on male and female's spending habits and see whether your ideas are correct. So...to begin with, let's split the total population into three parts: let's start with, uh, young people up to the age of 34 in group one. Q1 Then...ummm...let's place those in the 35 to 59-year-old in the next group. That then leaves us with adults over the age of 60 in the final group. Does that make sense?

OK. So, I have discovered that people in the first group, that's people up to the age of 34, spend most of their money on fashion and online services like games. Q2&Q3 I doubt that comes as a surprise, does it? However, I do confess that I had expected to find that they spent a lot of money on entertainment like films.

OK...the next group is the 35 to 59-year-old category. Obviously, as I predicted, these people spend most of their income on daily necessities like food, household items and clothes. Q4 Surprisingly, I also discovered that people in the age group between 35 and 59 also spend a lot of money on gardens. Q5 I suppose it makes sense, if you think about it. People usually already have their own homes during these ages and gardens are very expensive to maintain. These people also spend a lot of money on security equipment, like home alarms to keep their children safe. Now if we look at the last group, that's people over 60... Q6 I expected to find that they spend their money on kitchen improvements and travel. But, again, I was proved incorrect. People in the over 60 category spend most of their money on cars and life insurance, Q7&Q8 because they would concern more about their life and health after retirement. Most elder people in the survey expressed that they planned to enjoy their life, Q9 instead of sharing work with their families, like taking care of grandchildren. Q10

4.1

1

Boy: Can I have that ball?

Assistant: The basketball?

Boy: No, the football.

Assistant: OK. It's 12.5 pounds.

2

Girl: I'd like the blue bag.

Assistant: The black bag?

Girl: No, it's the blue one.

Assistant: Oh, this one is more expensive. It's 130 pounds.

3

Boy: Sorry, can I have one more sandwich?

Waiter: So two sandwiches, right?

Boy: Yes, I'd like the bill, please.

Waiter: It's 10 pounds altogether.

4.2

Hello, everyone, today I will teach you a traditional meal in England, which is called Sunday roast. In England, Sunday roast is almost a type of roast meat, like beef or chicken, with roast potatoes and other vegetables, such as carrots, beans or broccoli. Then you put some salt and cheese on it before eating. Traditionally, people eat their Sunday roast at home, but nowadays quite a lot of people eat Sunday roast in restaurants.

4.3

Martin: Hi, Emma.

Emma: Hi, Martin. Where have Mum and Dad gone?

Martin: They've gone out to town, I think. They're getting some things for the barbecue. Q1

Emma: Right, we are having a party tonight. What are you up to?

Martin: Oh, I'm preparing a dish.

Emma: What is it?

Martin: It's a steamed fish. Q2 I'll bring it to the guests at the party, but I'm running out of time.

Emma: It's OK. You still have time. Do you need any help? I can cut the ingredients for you.

Martin: It's fine, well, actually, OK, yes.

Emma: What do you need?

Martin: Oh, uh...let me see. Tomato please. Q3

Emma: OK, right. I can handle it.

Martin: You can find them in the fridge.

Emma: What else do you need?

Martin: Can you help me boil the water as well?

Emma: OK, no problem. (*laugh*)

Martin: You're laughing. Why are you laughing at me?

Emma: I'm not laughing at you. I'm laughing at your face. You got some ketchup on your face. Q4 Look at the mirror.

Martin: Oh, no. I need to clean my face.

Emma: Well, we've got things for the barbecue, and a steamed fish. Are you sure these are enough to feed everyone?

Martin: Em...probably not.

Emma: I think we need to buy some snacks and drinks. Q5

Martin: You are right. But I don't have much money on me.

Emma: Relax, I still have some money.

Martin: Great! You've been a real help, Emma.

4.4

Sam: Mary, could you tell me who does the shopping in your family?

Mary: Sure. Well, actually, it all depends on the sort of shopping. There are five people in my family but only my mum and I go out and do the shopping. Q1&Q2 To be honest, I think most families are the same. I mean, my mum always gets the food from the supermarket. She knows what everyone likes to eat, you know, so she always gets the right types of food. She also makes a list of things to buy. She says making a list is the best way to avoid spending too much money. Q3 Anyway, she goes shopping once a week and buys everything the family needs. My dad and sister never go shopping, Q4&Q5 but I like going shopping with my friends. I like buying fashionable items like clothes and jewellery even if they are expensive. Q6&Q7 But most of the time, once I get home, I'm not really interested in the things I've bought and I have to take them back and ask for my money back. I really hate that, to be honest. It's actually very embarrassing. For example, I once bought a black bag that lost my interest when I got home. Q8 So, I went back to the shopping mall to return it. Q9 The process took me about one and a half hours. Q10 Although it was really troublesome, I still love shopping very much!

Unit 2 Parenting and Schooling

1.3

Kiran Chetry: Our next guest caused a bit of stir with her last article when she said Chinese mothers are better at raising kids. Amy Chua is bringing up Q1 her children in the way her mother raised her, in a strict Chinese household, but with some small problems Q2. She went so far as to publish all her seemingly radical Q3 and, to some extent, outdated Q4 ideas in a new book. This is an extract Q5 right here. 'Here are some things that my daughters, Sophia and Louisa, are never allowed to do: play computer games, choose their own extracurricular Q6 activities, get any grade lower than an A, and play any instrument other than the piano or violin.' Readers have certainly been discussing Q7 her words, and the book has caused quite a bit of controversy Q8. It's called *Battle Hymn of the Tiger Mother*, and the author Amy Chua is with us today...Amy, thanks for joining us. To be honest, a lot of this has been quite familiar to Q9 me. My father is from Nepal, and a lot of what you wrote is so typical of Asian

culture. I mean, children growing up Q10 in our Asian culture are expected to listen to their parents for a far greater degree than kids in the West, and parents are more interested in what they expect from their kids, rather than what their kids want.

1.4

Kiran Chetry: Let's begin by having a chat about some of the things you advocate. Unsurprisingly, some people have objected to your use of the term 'Chinese parenting', but that's exactly what it is in your experience.

Amy Chua: Absolutely, this is just my own story, and I actually make it clear that I'm not generalising about all Chinese parents. I'm just talking about my own experience, and in fact it's more of a Chinese immigrant thing. As you said, there are a lot of parents from across Asia…actually not just Asia. I know people from Guinea and Jamaica who raise their children in a similar way, and meanwhile, I know quite a few Chinese parents who reject these methods, partly because they don't like it when it is applied to them.

3.2

练习1

Lorraine: Hi. I'm Lorraine. When I was a kid, I absolutely hated school and made no effort with my exams. Q1 I wasn't interested at all…I couldn't wait to leave school and get a job. My parents worked long hours but we were poor — my dad drove a taxi and my mum was a dental receptionist. Q2 My earliest goals were to earn money and provide for my parents. That's why I left school when I was 16 and got a job in a local baker's — a family business that sold dairy products and all kinds of bread. Q3 The salary was pretty basic, but it was a start! I tried my best to perform well, and it wasn't long before the shop owner, Mr Tideswell, made me the manager. I really enjoyed the responsibility, but I realised that I needed more. Eventually, once I had some experience and had saved enough money, I opened my own small bakery and, well, in the first decade of my business, I opened over 50 shops. Q4 I had to work long hours, so I didn't get much sleep along the way. My business continued to grow very quickly, and it is still growing. Right now, it's worth over £25 million. It's an achievement I'm really proud of!

Martine: Hi, I'm Martine. I did really well at school and was always top of the class, and I also got into a great university. Q5 Both of my parents graduated from famous universities — my father majored in business administration and my mum studied chemistry. Q6 But my major was medicine and I used to pursue a career as a doctor. Q7 I was pretty young when I made the decision to study medicine, and my parents were very proud of me. But after a few years, I didn't enjoy working in hospital at all. The job was extremely stressful and demanding. I was busy with my job and spent little time accompanying my family members. Actually, I found that my real passion was art. I just loved painting. Q8 And that's exactly what I am doing. Now, I enjoy a stress-free life and I can be there for my wife and children when they need me. I don't earn much money, but I don't mind because now I love every day of my life!

练习2

Jim: Hi, Sandy. How's the essay going?

Sandy: Oh, hi Jim. The essay...oh, I'm struggling to find source materials. It's hard to access the resources I need in the library.

Jim: So, how do you deal with it all?

Sandy: Well, actually, I make a list of all the resources I need to use and search for them online. It's not the best approach, is it? Since I can't always find the digital copies. Q1

Jim: You're right. Actually, I've found a good way around the problem. I've found some free resource websites that allow you to download books for free. Q2 You can put them on your e-reader device if you have one. I like it because it's much cheaper than buying everything. Well, what do you do, Andreas?

Andreas: Oh, to be honest, my approach isn't as sophisticated as that. I buy all the books I find online. And it's much more expensive. But I can easily go through and underline all the important details with a pen. It's also good for eyes. Obviously, the e-reader approach would be much better and cheaper. Q3 Alice, what are you doing?

Alice: Oh...I'm half-way through, really. I seldom use online resources. I just rely on traditional journals from library. Q4 So, it takes much time to find the articles I need. Q5 But when I check the catalogue, I can find some useful materials easily and save time. Q6

Sandy: I had another problem. I find it hard to get the textbooks for next term. Q7 The librarian told me that the textbooks were so popular in the library. What's more, they were sold out in the bookstore on our campus. Q8

Jim: I suggest you ask the graduates to check if they still keep them Q9 or you can find someone who has the textbooks and take a photocopy. Q10

Sandy: Good idea! How can I forget that! Thanks a lot!

Jim: You're welcome.

4.2

Host: Today I will talk with two experts to discover how their family background has affected their career choices. Emma Jones is a travel journalist and the founder of a company that promotes food tourism. **Q1** What role has your family played in shaping your career aspirations?

Emma: Well, my parents were great. After graduating with a degree in journalism in college, **Q2** my mum encouraged me to follow my dreams. **Q3** Thus I've always, you know, I've always lived my life for what I love, which isn't something everyone can do.

Host: What made you decide to go into food tourism?

Emma: Well, the fact is, when doing my first job in a national newspaper, **Q4** I was unhappy. I know I wasn't happy with what I was doing. Then my mum turned up to visit me, and we went out for dinner. She said, 'Honestly, this isn't the right career for you. I think you need to think about what you really care about, and make a big decision, then figure out how to achieve what you want.' That was like an eye-opening moment for me. I realised that I really hated news reporting, and that my real passion was in food! **Q5**

Host: David Netanyahu was an actor who lived in New Zealand and now is a coach. **Q6** David, how did your family support your career development?

David: When I graduated from high school, I went to study economics. **Q7** Around then, I was expecting to work in finance. But after less than three months, I knew that I didn't want to get a job in a large finance firm in London or somewhere. Then I had a heart-to-heart talk with my father. **Q8** I told him that I wouldn't go back. You know, the first thing he said was, 'Right. So let's help you go into drama then.' Then I got a job as an actor because I had always loved watching drama and studied it in my spare time. **Q9&Q10** My mum and dad didn't question my decision. I feel that I've been very fortunate.

4.3

Advisor: Now, as you can see from our leaflet, we offer a number of programmes. What sort of things are you looking for?

Caller: Well, I'm not interested in having my own painting exhibition. I just want to improve my painting techniques.

Advisor: OK. So you can join in the graphic design course if that's what you're interested in. **Q1**

Caller: Great. What happens then?

Advisor: You need to take a look at the course pack.

Caller: What does that involve?

Advisor: You can read all the materials about the course, as well as listening to the audio sections and instructional DVDs. **Q2** Oh, and there will be some assessments in the end.

Caller: OK. What if I don't like it?

Advisor: Well, you can drop out of it. You will have over two weeks to decide, and you can get your money back without a delay. **Q3**

Caller: Ah, that seems fine. So, please tell me a little more about the enrolment fee.

Advisor: The price has just gone down. It is £325 now, **Q4** compared with £350 before. The price just went down last month.

Caller: OK. That sounds good. What about the course tutors?

Advisor: Well, before we turn to that, you need to provide a sample to us. **Q5**

Caller: When do you need this by?

Advisor: Em...you can get it to us in about a week, if that's OK. **Q6**

Caller: Sure. And what about the lessons?

Advisor: There will be 20 classes in total, and each one has an assessment in the end.

Caller: And what sort of feedback will I get? **Q7**

Advisor: There's an online forum that you can log in every day. You can get some ongoing guidance from our tutors. **Q8**

Caller: OK. Thanks. I think that's all my questions.

Advisor: Great. Let me know if you need more help.

Caller: OK. Thanks. Bye.

Unit 3 Keeping Fit

1.3

1 A group of special mountaineers from the east coast of America scaled one of the world's grandest mountains.

2 To be honest, my first thought was that we wouldn't make it to the top. We almost gave up several times.

3 Mount Kilimanjaro is one of the most difficult challenges for an average climber. The task was even more daunting for a team of special climbers from New York.

4 All the climbers involved in this task are young people.

5 Four are deaf, one is blind, and the rest of us are survivors of the earthquake. It was much harder than I thought it would be. But we carried on, and most of us made it to the summit.

2.3

练习2

1 The Longevity Project actually began in the early 1920s, when Lewis Terman of Stanford University recruited more than 1,000 boys and girls to participate in his research. He aimed to continually observe them until their early adulthood and witness their growth. Actually, he has been studying them until the end of his life. **Q1** We continued the study about two decades ago and have been looking at reasons for longer life, you know, why some people live longer than others and the secrets.

2 That's right. We've carried out a lot of researches on this field mainly by collecting people's questions about their health. Q2 Right now, we've started compiling all our researches in one book, so that people who want to know more about what we're doing can learn more. Obviously, things about healthy living has aroused considerable interests among people.

3 There's a popular misconception that if you want to live a longer life, you need to be very strict about the kind of food you eat. So, in many ways, the Longevity Project is all about challenging those misconceptions and putting things straight. We were surprised about the findings in the Longevity Project. One of the findings that really shocked me was that hard work and even stress aren't as harmful as people think. In fact, people who work the hardest live the longest. Q3

4 In addition, there is something that we also found in other studies — being cheerful and optimistic is one of the best things you can do, Q4 especially if you're facing a serious problem. This sort of attitude keeps you focused if you believe things will get better. If you're sick or undergoing serious medical treatment for a major illness, just believing that you'll be OK is very helpful.

3.2

练习1

Faris: Well, I'm in pretty good shape because I do a lot of physical exercise like swimming and football, but, um, it's always been my dream to compete in a triathlon. It's a great event. Um, you know, a triathlon pushes you physically in three different ways, swimming, cycling and running. Q1 It's really difficult because you have to do one after another without breaks. Q2 The distance for running varies but can be quite long. I'd like to run the longest distance, but that's really too much for me. Over a shorter distance, I will have a better chance of performing well. Q3 One of the events involves a 750-metre swim, and then you've got to cycle for about 20 kilometres and run for five kilometres. Q4 For me, I'm not exactly sure which one is my favourite event. When I'm going to take part in it, I need to spend at least six months in training and preparing. Q5 I definitely wouldn't be in the right condition any earlier than that. It's not something that you can accomplish without any preparation! Um, obviously it's a great way to keep fit because the triathlon is really intense. On top of that, I have to change my diet and sleeping routine, so I can prepare better. Yeah, I can't wait to join it and I just hope I'll be successful in it.

练习2

Dave: Good afternoon, guys. Welcome.

Mike: Thanks, Dave. We know you're busy.

Flo: Yeah, we really appreciate it.

Dave: No problem. So you guys are studying the Sports Science, right?

Mike: Yeah. We're the first-year students, but as I mentioned in the e-mail, um, we have a presentation to do on physiotherapy in sports and we think you are the best person to speak on that topic. Q1

Dave: Fine. So what can I do to help?

Flo: Well, we'd like to know about the most common types of the injuries you deal with and how to treat them.

Dave: OK. Well, as you know, physiotherapists treat different injuries of sports professionals.

Mike: Yeah. Is massage a very common form of therapy?

Dave: Yeah, it's pretty common, because, you know, it's a hands-on treatment and it just involves applying pressure to the muscles around the affected area.

Flo: Is that the most common treatment you offer?

Dave: Um, I suppose so. We generally meet a lot of different injuries and have to decide what kind of treatment to use on a per-person basis. Q2

Flo: And are there any other treatments?

Dave: For sports injuries, of course, there are many treatments. Massage alone isn't enough, even with muscular injuries.

Mike: We read about a technique called 'stability training'. Do you do that?

Dave: Sure. This is a method that is all about improving the individual's posture and body shape. Q3

Mike: So, is it for the spine area?

Flo: I think I've heard of this too…it supposedly gives you more power and is particularly popular with tennis players.

Dave: Yeah. This is an important kind of treatment. It can help develop strength. Q3

Flo: What other things can athletes do to boost performance?

Dave: We sometimes suggest using a pad or block for sports shoes, but this is only partly helpful.

Mike: What about electrical equipment?

Dave: Electrotherapy has become more common, as it is supposed to speed up the body's capacity to repair itself.

Flo: So how much electricity do you use?

Dave: Oh, only a small amount, but, even so, the treatment doesn't work that well.

Mike: So I guess you don't use it regularly?

Dave: No, we seldom use it. Q4

Mike: I see, so, do you get people coming here who just want to improve their sporting techniques? I mean, sometimes people just want to improve their performance.

Dave: Ah, yeah, we do. We tend to make videos of them in that case and then show them where they went wrong. It's called video analysis. Q5

Flo: What you were saying earlier — about posture — I could do with some help there!

Dave: Well, just book an appointment and we'll get someone to take a look at you.

Mike: I think we all need some help in some areas.

4.2

Host: Today I will give you a few suggestions about health. Firstly, it's actually better to do less intense exercise on a regular basis than doing intense exercise irregularly. Q1 It's good for your heart to be active as often as possible! As long as you do at least an hour's exercise a day, you'll find that you sleep better and that's the main advantage of exercise. Q2

Moving on to health and safety, break times are an important part of the daily schedule. If you're busy, sometimes it won't be possible to take a long break, but try to get several short breaks into your schedule every day, Q3 otherwise you may get tired and make careless errors. Q4

Another important issue is cleanliness. It's important to keep your room sanitary at all time, so do everything you can to ensure this. Wash your hands thoroughly and clean up the mess. If you have full-time cleaners, that would be perfect. Q5 If you don't, just take the responsibility for keeping the place clean.

4.3

Dr Howell: One of the most important factors to consider when dealing with teenagers who have sleep issues is that they tend to be nocturnal. Most teenagers stay up late and sleep longer than adults, Q1&Q2 but this isn't because they are lazy. Their brains are wired in a different way. This doesn't just apply to human adolescents. Similar traits have been observed in animal adolescents. Of course, the most problematic aspect of this is the daily routine. Kids at middle school have a lot of exams to prepare for and they have to go to school early. Obviously, they will feel tired most of the time. There are some ways to solve this problem. For example, getting up at the same time each day, being exposed to sunlight for about half an hour each morning, and ensuring a regular but small intake of melatonin, a hormone vital for sleep, Q3 are the ways that proved to be effective.

It's important to make up for lost sleep. A teenager who loses two hours of sleep a day during the week will need to get some extra hours at the weekend. That basically means that weekends are the time when they need to make up all their lost sleep. One major misconception is that teenagers are lazy because they sleep longer, or because they fall asleep in class or seem tired all the time. In fact, it's not because they're lazy or bored; it's because they simply aren't getting enough sleep. Q4 I mean, there's a major difference between children who can not find motivation and children who want to sleep all the time. It's not just about what time they start school; it's also about what time they get up for other activities too. Q5 It's not unusual for a teenager who joins the football club as well as the orchestra to get up before dawn every morning. This can have a negative effect on sleep patterns. Now most teenagers can deal with it pretty well, but for some people it can be terrible.

4.4

Dr Howell: One of the most important factors to consider when dealing with teenagers who have sleep issues is that they tend to be nocturnal. Q1 Most teenagers stay up late and sleep longer than adults, but this isn't because they are lazy. Their brains are wired in a different way. This doesn't just apply to human adolescents. Similar traits have been observed in animal adolescents. Q2 Of course, the most problematic aspect of this is the daily routine. Kids at middle school have a lot of exams to prepare for and they have to go to school early. Obviously, they will feel tired most of the time. Q3 There are some ways to solve this problem. For example, Q4 getting up at the same time each day, being exposed to sunlight for about half an hour each morning, and ensuring a regular but small intake of melatonin, a hormone vital for sleep, are the ways that proved to be effective.

Unit 4 Media and Advertising

Listening

1.3

Phil: Hey, Liz. Take a look at this.

Liz: What is it?

Phil: It's a great advert for Valentine's Day.

Liz: Isn't it just an ad for selling chocolates?

Phil: Well, maybe it is, but it's pretty clever. I still think...

Liz: I'm not a fan of this kind of ad. Seriously, no man is going to buy his girlfriend chocolates because of an ad like that. B Whoever came up with that idea...

Phil: Can I just interrupt?

Liz: Sure.

Phil: I think you're wrong, but I can see where you're coming from. A lot of ads try to attract the consumers with a vision of ideal lives that... A

Liz: Of course they do! They think that we're all idiots who believe that buying chocolates is the best way to keep our love life on track! E I mean, what kind of woman would...

Phil: Can I say something? All brands need to market their products. Obviously, they have to make their products attractive, C but you can't blame them if people decide to

buy them. We have choices. If you...

Liz: No way! I totally disagree. Look at the way alcohol companies market their fruit-flavoured drinks to young people! D

Phil: Well, no, I'm not with you on that. It's not advertising companies that decide what we buy. It's our decision and... I

Liz: You're wrong. So many ads make false promises about how their products will benefit people. F It just isn't...

Phil: Sorry, but take a look at this advertisement I've got right here. It's all about protecting the environment. J Surely you agree that...

Liz: Absolutely not! Advertising is simply about making money! G

2.2

练习3

Today, anyone Q1 buying food always wants to make sure it's the right colour. So, for example, Q2 when I Q3 purchase tinned or canned vegetables, such as carrots, it's very likely that the carrots inside the can have been altered with colouring chemicals. Carrots are naturally orange, but that doesn't mean they are orange all over or that all carrots are the same shade of orange. So Q4 that means, in order to please the consumers, a natural colouring can be added to give the carrots a more acceptable colour. A paper on the Wise Geek website Q5 pointed out, 'People Q6 have been adding colours to their food for thousands of years. Early food colourings were commonly made from crushed seeds.'

3.2

练习1

Lecturer: In this lecture, we'll look at the rising trend of citizen journalism. This refers to journalism that is practised by ordinary members of the public, people who have no professional journalistic qualifications. Q1 If you're interested in writing and want to develop your skills, then this is a great place to start. Furthermore, I'll give you some practical tips that are helpful.

Citizen journalists are becoming more and more popular in the field of news reporting. These days, it's easy to capture images of important events with a smartphone and post them online, Q2 or send them to a news agency either for free or for money.

Further, citizen journalism allows people to post their own views, ideas and opinions about the main issues of the day. It's not difficult to write a report or an article about issues avoided by the mainstream media and post it on an alternative news website or blog. Q3 This makes it easier for people to express their views.

Also, in the past, the only way to get your opinions read by a wider audience was to publish them in a newspaper, but in the end, only a small number of people will read it. These days, however, everyone can write about the things they care about and post them on a blog or other online platforms. The consequence of this is that amateur journalists tend to write about things that are only relevant to their local area, such as something that affects the local services like the hospitals and schools, as well as the traffic in their towns. Q4 This means they generally avoid writing about anything that relates to national issues.

Citizen journalism is certainly on the rise. A huge number of online media outlets have sprung up all over the world.

练习2

Announcer: Now, we're delighted to have Rod Robert with us in the studio today. Rod is going to let us know a bit more about the district marathon that's going ahead next month.

Rod: Thanks a lot, Michelle. Yes, we absolutely can't wait for the big day to begin. In case anyone listening doesn't already know, the marathon is a long running race of about 42 kilometres or 26 miles, Q1 and in this year's event, there will be more than 10,000 people participating. I hope many of you will join too, so, if anyone wants to know what to expect, please listen carefully.

The first thing you should think about is planning your day. Make sure you plan everything well in advance. A lot of roads will be closed off and, even though we don't know exactly when the road closure will start, I'd say it's probably the best if you leave your car at home and make your way around the town on foot or by bike. Be aware, though you decide to go by bike, many of the roads will only be open for runners. Q2

Another suggestion is about the weather. The weather may be hot or cold on the day of the race. You can check the weather forecast the night before. Q3 If it's going to be cold, make sure you wear thick, warm clothes; and if it's going to rain, make sure you've got umbrellas. On a hot day, you'll need plenty of water. However, please make sure you don't hand any drink to runners as you'll distract them from the race. There will be thousands of volunteers lining the roads, so you can leave it to them to give out the drinks.

When you get into the city centre, look for a place to stand where you can see the road clearly. It might take you a while to find somewhere suitable, but make sure you won't step onto the road. Q4 There may be thousands of people coming in your direction. Some of these people will be exhausted and won't be able to focus clearly. This could lead

to some serious accidents, as runners can easily crash into obstacles like you in their paths. What you should do is to make sure you give your support, particularly when they start to get tired. So support them loudly, and for once, don't worry about being too loud! The louder, the better. Q5

Oh, and one more thing: if you have friends or relatives who're participating in the race, make sure you don't wait for them at the end. There isn't enough space at the finish line to accommodate everyone, so you'll need to stay back, I'm afraid.

4.1

Paul: Welcome to our Power Station. Q1 Today I'd like to introduce a few brave climbers who come from the east coast of America. Q2 Let's welcome them!

Climber 1: Thanks, Mr Edward. Q3 My main ambition was to push myself to keep on going. Apart Q4 from accomplishing the physical challenge, we all knew there was something far more important at stake. Like someone said, 'Nothing Q5 is impossible.'

Paul: The expedition started in late September Q6 and ended over the weekend.

4.2

Host: Hello, welcome to our show. How can I call you?

Jimmy: You can call me Jimmy. Q1 I'm here to apply for the position of engineer.

Host: Where are you from?

Jimmy: I'm from Germany. Q2

Host: Do you have relevant work experience?

Jimmy: I was an intern at IBM last year. Q3

Host: Wow! Awesome! Would you mind me asking your age?

Jimmy: I'm 24 years old. Q4 Actually, tomorrow is my birthday.

Host: 12 of June? Q5 My birthday is on 13 June!

Jimmy: Oh! We can celebrate it together, haha...

Host: Yeah, but after the show. So, young man, can you show us any talent? Q6

Jimmy: I can speak Chinese. Today I will sing a Chinese popular song.

Host: Amazing! Let's welcome Jimmy from Germany!

4.3

Lecturer: Today, we're going to look at ways of self-publishing online. If you want to get your work published online, the first thing you need to do is write something that will interest the readers. If you want to attract the readers, you'll need to use their language and write in a way that really grabs them, so put the most important part first, and think about how to narrow down everything you want to say to one or two sentences. Q1

If you can master the technique, you'll have no problem getting people interested. Once that's done, you'll need to fill in all the details in the rest of the article. A good way of organising the article is to give a pyramid structure. All the important facts go at the top of the article, with all the smaller, less important details at the bottom. Q2

The most important thing is to grab the audience and keep them reading, so you need to hold their attention. A great technique for that is to quote all the people associated with the story, Q3 and let them tell the audience what happened in their own words, like, you know, for example, 'Pete, local fireman, said, "Nobody really knew what was happening. We just acted instinctively."' These kinds of quotes really give readers impact.

Once you've finished the first draft, you'll need to read it to yourself to make sure you haven't given any false information. Don't get people's names wrong or mix up their ages. The next stage is editing and proofreading, ensuring that the language you've used is appropriate, and that your paragraphs are of sufficient length. They need to be brief, and this will help to hold readers' attention.

Another important thing to remember is that if people read online, they are likely to stop reading your article and jump to another website, so make sure the whole article is brief. You don't need to write a conclusion; Q4 you can finish your article without one.

Another good tip which I've always thought worth repeating is — the camera doesn't lie. It's true, so if you can, include a photograph of the event you're writing about. It'll draw attention and highlight what you've been saying.

Lastly, you need to put a headline at the top Q5 — something that will grab everyone's attention and will make sure they don't just skim the article, and then, if it's well written, they'll read it more carefully afterwards.

4.4

Lecturer: OK. This lecture is about blogs and blogging, though I'm guessing you all know what a blog is. For those of you who don't, let's briefly define what a blog is. Maybe the simplest definition is that it's a kind of website that's like a journal or a personal account of events. It consists of posts — ideas, opinions or reports — that are arranged in date order, with the most recent post at the top. Q1

Now, let's take a look at what a blog consists of. Most blogs are written by a single author and are updated regularly. Most of the time they deal with one particular topic, but sometimes they deal with others too. Many bloggers like to write about personal life, and thus a lot of blogs are similar to diaries. Q2

However, not all blogs are about personal issues. Some blog writers focus on broader, social and political issues, as well as topics like arts and entertainment. The majority of blogs give readers the opportunity to get involved and respond to the posts, allowing them to add their own information as well. This means people can connect with a large number of other users, and learn from each other, acquire new ideas, and even make new acquaintances or meet business partners from all over the world. Q3

Millions of people are engaged in blogs every day, but the history of blogging isn't long at all. It is by no means clear when the first blog was created, but the first ever commonly acknowledged blog was seen in 1994. The word 'blog' had never been used by that time, but very quickly more and more websites like this began to appear all over the Internet.

After nearly four years, a man called Jorn Barger started using the term 'web log' to refer to this kind of online platforms. Soon afterwards, he started his own website called Robot Wisdom. By the turn of the century, a blogger called Peter Merholz humorously broke the word into the phrase 'we blog' and thus began using the term 'blog'. After this, most sites like this were known as 'blogs' and people who wrote them were 'bloggers'. Q4

As for writing a blog, you should decide how often you will update your blog. Some people may post every day to keep readers' attention. But you can decide on your own frequency, every week or month, as long as you can keep writing your blogs regularly. Q5 And you should check the latest news before you write your blog, in case there is outdated information.

Speaking

4.1

I like watching a drama Q1 series called *High School Life*. I usually Q2 watch it on Saturday afternoons when I'm at my cousin's house. We love watching this series, and we eat some snacks Q3 and just relax. The actors Q4 are very young and talented Q5. It's a very interesting Q6 programme.

Unit 5 Science and Technology

1.3

1

A: I've just read something that says an average Internet user has 30 online accounts!

B: Really? 30? Are you sure? What about you?

A: Oh, I can't remember. I've got two bank accounts, a few subscriptions...um...probably about 15 in total.

B: And do you use the same password for them all?

A: Well, no. I'm concerned about online security, so I use different passwords for different accounts.

B: Have you ever forgotten one of your passwords?

A: Actually, yes, I have...a few times. So I have to have them written down and kept in my purse!

B: Yes, that's a problem for me, too. I always write my passwords down. The problem with that is, someone might find them and hack into your accounts.

2

A: So, why don't you send Alice a message and ask her when the dinner starts?

B: Great idea. Er...have you seen my phone?

A: Er...I don't know...didn't you put it on the desk?

B: Oh, there it is. I hate it when I can't find my phone! I almost lost it last winter, during the Christmas holiday. It was terrible. Have you ever lost your mobile phone?

A: Yes, but not quite. Actually, someone stole my phone once.

B: Oh no! Really? Where? What happened?

A: Oh, I was at a sports game...a Formula 1 race event...you know, there were thousands of people watching it. When I checked my pocket, I realised my phone wasn't there. I'm pretty sure someone stole it.

B: Or maybe you left it somewhere.

3

A: Oh, this computer is so annoying. It's so slow and there's nothing I can do to speed it up! I can't stand it anymore!

B: Oh, no. Have you done an anti-virus check? That might be the best thing to do.

A: Yes, I have. I've done it a few times, and many viruses have shown up.

B: Really? That's worrying. You should take it to a computer store and get it checked over. You might lose all your work.

A: Oh, that never happens. It's just really slow sometimes.

B: Honestly, some viruses can do a lot of damage to your computer. Do you have anything important stored in it?

A: Oh, yes, all my coursework projects, as well as loads of personal stuff.

B: You should get Andy to check it for you right now. He is quite good at repairing computers.

2.3

练习3

1

Liam: Oh, no!

Stella: What's wrong?

Liam: I don't know. I can't upload the videos from my phone.

Stella: But that's not difficult, is it?

Liam: Yeah, I know, but there seems to be a problem.

Stella: Can I take a look? Well, you need to switch your phone on and make sure it's connected to the laptop.

Liam: Haha, well, obviously I know that.

Stella: And you need to plug in the USB cable to the laptop. Is it plugged in?

Liam: Oh, no. I forgot!

2

Lily: I can't find my tablet, Dave. I've looked everywhere, but I still can't find it. Did you see it?

Dave: Sorry, I didn't. Did you take it home?

Lily: Let me think...oh, I might leave it in Jane's house.

Dave: You'd better call Jane and ask her.

Lily: But she's out of town with her family today.

Dave: Well, you'll have to wait for her.

Lily: But it has all of my class materials, I can't finish my assignment without it.

Dave: Maybe you can ask for an extension by explaining your problem with the teacher.

练习4

Presenter: Hello and welcome to today's edition of *Tomorrow's World*. We'll discuss the Internet with Dr Emily Ross from the University of Leeds. Dr Ross, can you tell us when the Internet was invented?

Dr Ross: Well, Q1 that's a very good question. The Internet was actually Q2 developed for military reasons by the US Army in the mid-twentieth century. The government officials were concerned about communications in a nuclear war. Then Q3 they came up with the idea of connecting computers into a network so that Q4 if one part of the network was destroyed, the rest of it would continue to function.

Presenter: So the first Q5 people who used the network were scientists and researchers, right?

Dr Ross: That's right. People in universities started sending information all over the world, sharing ideas and research findings. They were absolutely Q6 shocked by how effective it was. It wasn't until the 1970s that the term 'Internet' was used.

Presenter: But it wasn't Q7 until the mid-1990s that the Internet became what we recognise today.

Dr Ross: That's true. The Internet is a vital Q8 part of entertainment, communications, learning and getting information now.

3.2

练习1

Hello, welcome to the Science Museum. We have so many activities here. You will probably complain that you haven't got enough time to see everything. Your priority should be visiting the main exhibition, which is currently displaying many everyday inventions that have changed our lives throughout the ages. It's educational to see the history and the development of the objects we use every day, like staplers, coffee filters and light bulbs, as they have become a basic part of our daily life, even if we take them for granted. I really advise you to visit that part. One more thing I'd suggest if you don't have much time, is to take one of our guided tours of smaller exhibitions on the west side of the building. Q1&Q2 These tours usually take place every 30 minutes, so that's pretty regular. Just make your way to the ground floor and wait by the statue. That's where the tours begin. OK, so, it's not just adults that can enjoy their trips to the museum. Children can enjoy as well. We have a whole host of activities on offer that are suitable for children of all ages. We have a special activity area for very young children called Shapes and Patterns, where toddlers can play with objects and images and see how they make different patterns. This is a really educational activity and really benefits children. For students who are taking history classes, we have a range of more complex exhibitions. Right now, we have one about the history of farming technology, showing how agricultural methods developed over the years. Q3&Q4 Some of our older visitors might like the industrial exhibition. It tracks the historical development of various forms of heavy industry in Britain over several hundred years. Finally, we have some for teenagers. There are a whole series of exhibitions they'll enjoy, but I think the most popular one is the space exhibition that shows how the universe works. It's a great place to learn more about science and there are a lot of hands-on activities, exploring how light and chemicals work. It's definitely one of the best exhibitions in the whole museum. And then it is advisable to visit our robot workshop, where you can make a cool robot on your own under the guidance of our staff! Q5&Q6

练习2

Video games generate a lot of discussions. Addiction is a major problem associated with video games. One of the main reasons for addiction, I think, is the immediate satisfaction the user gets when playing — the quick results which are easy to see. You can measure your progress very easily in a video game and it's easy to see where you need to improve to get to the next level. People who get addicted to games aren't necessarily attracted to the quality of the games. It's just that the reality makes it much harder for people to achieve their individual goals. And many games are designed to be challenging to keep gamers coming back. Q1–Q3

Playing video games is certainly a way of escaping reality and avoiding real-world problems. Some recent studies concerning the relationship between video game addiction and depression showed an alarming correlation. Violence is another problem associated with video games, especially for young children. And some players may feel hungry and fatigued when they are playing games for a long time, which could eventually lead to a sleep disorder or diet-related health issues. Q4&Q5

Video game addiction can be just as dangerous as any other addiction. If people are seriously addicted to video games, recovery is not always easy, but it is still achievable. The first step in overcoming dependency is being able to recognise that it

exists. If you or someone you know exhibits any of the signs or symptoms, please don't hesitate to find help to treat video game addiction. Or you can find another hobby to divert your attention, for example, listening to music, doing some gardening, raising a pet and something else to keep your hands and mind busy. Q6&Q7

4.2

Hi there, so today we're going to discuss animation technology, a subject known to all of us, especially those who love Hollywood animation films such as *Toy Story* and *Shrek*. First of all, let's look at the origins of animation and how the technical aspects of it have evolved.

The world's first animated film was made up from a number of sketches as well as a range of 'funny faces' which were all filmed in sequence. They looked like a moving image of someone's face. The animation was very short and wasn't similar to the animation films of today. A Frenchman named Emile Cohl took things a bit further by using paper cutting, building up small scenes with a large number of cutouts. Q1–Q3 The man who changed everything, Walt Disney, came along with the intention of making the characters appear 'real'. In 1928, the first sound animated film, *Steamboat Willie*, was released and used hand-painted slides known as 'cells'. Q4&Q5 The cells were placed one on top of the other and then quickly replaced by the next in sequence. This first film contained one of the most iconic animated characters of all time: Mickey Mouse. Disney then produced the well-known feature-length animated film in 1937, entitled *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*. Q4&Q5 The arrival of computer technology and the innovations of Pixar have brought animation new development. By tracing the history of Pixar films, we can witness the modern evolution of animation. The company's first computer animated feature film, *Toy Story*, was made entirely by computer graphics. It was regarded as an outstanding achievement when it was released more than 20 years ago. *Monsters, Inc.*, released a few years later, added a new animation feature, making animal fur appear real on the screen and giving the characters far greater appeal. Q6&Q7 The representative of applying this feature was *Finding Nemo*, a blockbuster that attracted many audiences at that time.

4.3

Radio Host: I'm Tom Baker, and welcome to *Expert Opinion*. Today's guest is the inventor Jane Mackintosh, and we're happy to have her on the show. Thanks for being here, Jane.

Jane: Good evening, Tom.

Radio Host: There are many people out there who are fascinated by inventions and inventors. What would you say to those who want to be an inventor? What advice would you give them?

Jane: Well, there are two things I'd say. The best inventors aren't people who think about how to become millionaires. You should begin with a small thought — what can I invent that will make the world a slightly better place to live in? Q1 For example, people often lose their keys. Why not invent something that helps to find them?

Radio Host: That's a great piece of advice. OK, so, we have our first caller, Derek from Leeds. Hello, Derek.

Derek: Hello, Tom. Hello, Jane. Yes, I've got a question. I've had a great idea for an invention, but I want to keep it a secret.

Jane: Sure, if you've got a good idea, the last thing you want to do is to tell someone about it.

Derek: Right, but the problem is...I've got a full-time job and two kids, so I haven't got enough time to work on my invention. Should I quit my job? Q2

Jane: That's a great question and the answer is, no. Don't quit your job. It's much harder to work on your invention without a regular income.

Derek: OK. Thanks for that.

Radio Host: You're welcome, Derek, and we've got someone else on the line now. Her name's Peta, and she's still at school. Peta, how old are you?

Peta: I'm 14. I love science and making things, and I really want to be an inventor.

Jane: Great.

Peta: Yes, but the problem is that I don't know how to narrow all my ideas down into one single good idea. Can you help me?

Jane: OK, that's a common problem. You've got all kinds of great ideas, but you don't know which one to focus on. That's great, Peta. It's far better than not having ideas at all. My advice is, you should focus on your best idea first. That doesn't mean you should abandon other ideas, but it won't be possible to work on all of them at the same time. The best thing to do is, write down all your ideas on a paper or on the computer and store them for later, but definitely work on one idea first. Q3–Q5

Peta: OK.

Answers

Unit 1 Daily Necessities

Listening

1.1

Mike	Amanda
A, B, C, F	A, E, F

1.2

stake; soup; cheese; ham; cake; wine

1.3

1 bookstore 2 restaurant 3 sports store 4 supermarket

1.4

Daily necessities	Other goods
food, clothes, mobile phone, vehicle, shoes, water	house, furniture

2.3

练习1

略

练习2

1 失去爆破 2 失去爆破 3 连读 4 弱读

练习3

1 delicious 2 social activity 3 current
4 lack of confidence 5 education 6 development
7 famous

3.2

练习1

1 6 months / six months 2 food / drinks
3 drinks / food 4 clothes / mobile phones
5 mobile phones / clothes 6 friends / family
7 family / friends 8 second-hand stores
9 curtains 10 more than 100

练习2

1 34 2 fashion / online services
3 online services / fashion 4 daily necessities
5 gardens 6 60
7 cars / life insurance 8 life insurance / cars
9 enjoy 10 (their) families

4.1

1 football; 12.5 pounds 2 blue bag; 130 pounds
3 2 sandwiches / two sandwiches; 10 pounds

4.2

beef; potatoes; beans; broccoli; carrots; salt; cheese; chicken

4.3

1 barbecue 2 a steamed fish 3 tomato
4 ketchup 5 snacks and drinks

4.4

1 five / 5 2 (My) mum
3 Making a list 4 (My) dad / (My) sister
5 (my) sister / (my) dad 6 clothes / jewellery
7 jewellery / clothes 8 black
9 mall / shopping mall 10 1.5

Reading

1.1

1 F 2 A 3 B 4 E 5 D 6 C

1.2

1 lamp 2 rocking chair 3 drawer 4 sink
5 carpet 6 wardrobe 7 mirror 8 sofa

1.3

1 Wall Speaker 2 Sleep
3 The Wall 4 Wireless Kitchen

1.4

略

2

任务1

1 阐释法 新闻报道 / 科普文章
2 比较法 科普文章
3 顺序法 指南 / 说明书

任务2

1 顺序法
2 E → A → D → B → C → F

3

任务1

1 A 2 D 3 B 4 C

任务2

1 room size; kitchenware; pet allowance; recreation

2

A 第三句 B 最后一句 C 第六句和第八句

任务3

1 B 2 D 3 C 4 A

4

1 E 2 A 3 B 4 D 5 F 6 C

Speaking

1.1

略

1.2

1 cabinet 2 paper towels 3 dishwasher
4 toaster 5 coffee maker 6 refrigerator
7 microwave 8 pan 9 pot
10 cutting board

2.1

练习1

1 was said to be invented; was designed → Chinese character

2 are collected; are arranged; is provided; is included → dictionary

3 had been believed; is prepared; is said → coffee

练习2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

答题思路：可以按照空间排列顺序描述图中的物品，分别介绍它们各自的方位、材质和用途等，可以使用被动语态be located in，be seen，be made of，be used等进行描述。

I have a whole set of kitchenware that is arranged orderly in the kitchen. The metal cutlery and wooden chopping board are located in the bottom closets, as well as the colourful scrubbers. Most importantly, the automatic stoves can also be seen on the same floor, where the steamer and kettle are placed when I have to make my dinner.

3.1

略

3.2

略

4.1

1 B　2 C　3 A　4 D

4.2

略

Writing

1.1

1 participate　2 improve　3 priority
4 accomplish　5 obligation　6 leisure
7 housework　8 domestic

1.2

1 accomplish　2 participate　3 obligation
4 domestic　5 priority　6 improve

2.1

1 improving　2 make the first step
3 opportunity　4 contribute
5 make a living　6 strike a balance
7 affection

2.2

1 限定词 + 名词　主语　2 名词短语　主语
3 介词短语　状语　4 冠词 + 形容词 + 名词短语　宾语
5 形容词　宾语补足语　6 情态动词 + 动词　谓语

2.3

1 Specifically　2 Similarly　3 Furthermore
4 Meanwhile　5 Nevertheless　6 Overall

3.1

1 B

2 2–4–1–5–3

作用：1、2句是背景句；3、4句是改写题目；5句是个人观点

3.2

1 The line graph compares the number of graduates in two different genders in Canada between 1992 and 2006.

2 It is important to note that the number of graduates in Canada increased largely over the period shown.

3 Although the two genders show a similar trend in terms of a gradual growth, the number of graduated females was higher than that of males.

4.1

1 Shopping centres play an important role in driving the economic growth of local area.

2 The commercial activities provide more employment opportunities for local people.

3 Nowadays, people are accustomed to staying at home for a long time.

4 Lack of outdoor activities could contribute to many health problems.

5 Young people should be encouraged to go outdoors and get involved in sporting activities.

4.2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 The line graph compares Country A and Country B in terms of birth rates over a period of 80 years from 1935 to 2015.

2 Overall, the rates of birth declined during the whole period. Nevertheless, the year of 1965 saw the highest birth rate in both countries.

3 The line graph indicates the birth rates of Country A and Country B from 1935 to 2015.

4 Overall, there was a general decline in the birth rates of two countries over the 80 years and the birth rates of Country B in most years were higher than that of Country A.

Unit 2 Parenting and Schooling

Listening

1.1

1 F　2 A　3 D　4 E　5 C　6 B

1.2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

Parenting	Schooling
C, E, F	A, B, D

1.3

1 bringing up　2 small problems　3 radical
4 outdated　5 extract　6 extracurricular
7 discussing　8 controversy　9 familiar to
10 growing up

1.4

advocate; object to; term; experience; generalise; immigrant; reject; apply to

2.3

练习1

略

练习2

1 物体名词　2 价格数字　3 物体名词　4 价格数字

练习3

1 B　2 A　3 C　4 C　5 B

3.2

练习1

1 exams　2 taxi　3 baker　4 fifty
5 university　6 chemistry　7 doctor　8 art / painting

练习2

1 digital copies　2 free resource websites
3 e-reader　4 traditional journals
5 much time　6 catalogue
7 textbooks　8 bookstore (on campus)
9 graduates　10 photocopy

4.1

1 表示职业的名词　2 表示专业的名词
3 表示人的名词　4 表示公司的名词
5 表示兴趣的名词　6 表示职业的名词
7 表示专业的名词　8 表示人的名词
9 表示职业的名词　10 表示兴趣的名词

4.2

1 journalist　2 journalism　3 mum　4 newspaper
5 food　6 coach　7 economics　8 father
9 actor　10 drama

4.3

1 graphic design　2 DVDs　3 2 weeks / two weeks
4 £325 / 325 pounds　5 sample　6 a week
7 Feedback　8 tutors

Reading

1.1

1 C　2 A　3 E　4 B　5 D

1.2

1 inspiration　2 perseverance　3 Endurance
4 intelligence　5 morality

1.3

1 B　2 C　3 A

1.4

略

2

任务1

1

1) 第二段第一句 Anthony F. Grasha

2) 第三段最后一句

3) Expert; Formal Authority; Personal Model; Facilitator; Delegator

2

1) 事实（fact）　2) 观点（opinion）

3

1) D　2) A　3) E　4) C　5) B

任务2

1

1) D　2) B　3) C　4) A

2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

作者观点：The author prefers paper books to e-books.

事实信息1：第三段第二句

事实信息2：第五段第二句

事实信息3：第六段第四句

3

任务1

A 第一段第三句　B 第一段第四句
C 第一段最后一句　D 第二段

任务2

1 ×　2 √　3 √

任务3

1 C　2 D　3 D　4 B　5 A

任务4

1 C　2 A　3 C　4 B

4

1 A　2 C　3 D　4 A　5 B

Speaking

1.1

1 C　2 E　3 B　4 D　5 A

1.2

Study strategies	Bad study habits
C, D, F, G, I	A, B, E, H, J

2.1

练习1

1 hadn't talked　2 hadn't been　3 were; wouldn't be

练习2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

答题思路：可以分别从图中的四个方面来阐述家庭教育和学校教育对孩子的影响，两者同样重要，缺一不可。可以探讨缺少其中一方可能会造成的不良后果，也可以讲述大家对两种教育的认识误区等，可以使用虚拟语气。

Everyone is well aware of the significance of parenting and schooling in children's education. If one side is absent , a series of severe problems would emerge. Nowadays, school is mainly to instil knowledge, while parents are most responsible for their children's personality development. However, there are still juvenile crimes occurring because of the missing guidance from their parents or school. If they are accompanied more by their families or take part in some interesting activities in school, maybe they can have a happy life and avoid the crimes.

3.1

略

3.2

略

4.1

1 B 2 A 3 D 4 C 5 F 6 E

4.2

略

Writing

1.1

1 support 2 ethic 3 excess 4 primary
5 embrace 6 guidance 7 academic 8 relationship

1.2

1 support 2 guidance 3 relationship
4 primary 5 academic 6 embrace

2.1

1 distance education 2 Home schooling
3 obsessed with 4 parental supervision
5 academic performance 6 student competence

2.2

1 The competition starts early.
2 The teachers at this school remain unchanged in recent 5 years.
3 School is the first social organisation a child attends.
4 The person living alone does not necessarily feel lonely.
5 Small families have become a commonplace in modern society.
6 The number of high-school graduates enrolling in university fluctuated slightly in the US in recent years.

2.3

1 whether 2 As far as 3 lest 4 until
5 hence 6 on condition that 7 until

3.1

1 idea 2 explanation 3 example
4 additional information 5 conclusion 6 idea
7 explanation 8 comparison
9 additional information 10 conclusion

3.2

1 in 2 sharply 3 peak 4 saw
5 fluctuation 6 at 7 steady / stable 8 until
9 predicted 10 unchanged

4.1

1 The teaching of social skills is just as vital to a child's development in mathematics and literacy.
2 Teaching children good behaviour ought to start at the elementary level.
3 Home schooling has been a cause of some contention among education experts for some time.
4 The gap year has been popular with high school graduates in North America and Europe for several decades.
5 There are educational TV programmes aimed at young people that do provide them with mental nourishment.
6 Education is the best way to develop the competence and capability of the national workforce.

4.2

1 fluctuations 2 a gradual / moderate increase
3 reached 4 slightly higher
5 a sharp rise 6 peaking
7 a sudden decrease 8 a moderate / gradual increase
9 stable trend 10 fluctuated slightly

Unit 3 Keeping Fit

Listening

1.1

Healthy	Unhealthy
B, C, F, G	A, D, E, H

1.2

1 D 2 F 3 H 4 G 5 B 6 E 7 A 8 C

1.3

1 B 2 B 3 C 4 A 5 C 6 B

2.3

练习1

略

练习2

1 C 2 B 3 A 4 C

练习3

1 Actually 2 That's right. 3 In fact 4 In addition

3.2

练习1

1 C 2 C 3 B 4 B 5 A

练习2

1 C 2 B 3 A 4 C 5 A

4.1

略

4.2

1 C 2 C 3 C 4 B 5 A

4.3

1 B 2 C 3 A 4 C 5 A

4.4

1 B 2 A 3 B 4 C

Reading

1.1

1 B 2 D 3 C 4 E 5 A

1.2

1 Marathon 2 weightlifting 3 skating
4 badminton 5 gymnastics 6 wrestling

1.3

1 D 2 B 3 A 4 C

1.4

略

2

任务1

1 pros and cons（优缺点分析）

2

1) B　2) C　3) D

3 C

任务2

1 cause analysis（原因分析）

2

1) A　2) D　3) D

3

任务1

1 A　2 B　3 D

任务2

1 4)　2 1)　3 2)　4 3)

任务3

1 C　2 D　3 E　4 D　5 B

4

1 B　2 F　3 C　4 C　5 A　6 E

Speaking

1.1

1 play a brain training game　2 keep a healthy diet
3 do yoga　4 get enough sleep

1.2

略

2.1

练习1

1 tested 补语
2 interesting 定语
3 Jogging 状语

练习2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

答题思路：可以描述自己喜欢的运动，可以从其具体操作方式、坚持的时间、给身体带来的好处等方面具体讲述，在表述的过程中可用到非谓语动词。

I am a big fan of sports. My favourite type is the aerobic exercise such as yoga or swimming. Although doing exercise sometimes makes me tired and exhausted, but it will greatly relieve the study pressure, improve my blood circulation and strengthen the immune system. I go jogging about 2 kilometres in the morning everyday. Exercise not only builds a perfect body, but also gets us accustomed to a more regular lifestyle.

3.1

略

3.2

略

4.1

略

4.2

略

Writing

1.1

1 jog　2 cure　3 endanger　4 indigestion
5 overweight　6 virus　7 tiredness　8 moderate

1.2

名词	动词	形容词
allergy	\	allergic
obesity	\	obese
benefit	benefit	beneficial
harm	harm	harmful
health	\	healthy
variety	vary	various / varied

2.1

1 Fast food is not as nutritious as fresh vegetables and fruits.
2 It is strongly recommended that people should at least have fresh food every two days.
3 A healthy diet should include various vitamins and minerals.
4 Some people cannot resist the temptation to eat junk food, so they become obese gradually.
5 Leading dietitians recommend eating fruits and vegetables every day.

2.2

1 To host the Olympic Games gives the city a chance of improving its infrastructure.
2 Well-developed social health care could ensure the good health of the population.
3 At least 30 million US citizens of all ages have an eating disorder.
4 The physical education should teach students not only sports activities but also a healthy diet.
5 Parents cook healthy and nutritious foods for their children every day.

2.3

1 more importantly　2 in turn　3 as well as
4 In conclusion　5 Nonetheless

3.1

1 idea　2 explanation
3 further explanation　4 additional information
5 further explanation　6 conclusion
7 idea　8 explanation
9 further explanation　10 additional information
11 conclusion

3.2

1 drinking products　2 coffee　3 tea
4 snacks　5 pastries　6 sandwiches

4.1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 Going for extreme adventures is an effective way for some

people to relieve the stress in daily work and life.

2 Obesity caused by poor diet and lack of exercise has become a growing concern in many countries.

3 The majority of people spend most of their working hours sitting in front of a screen, with little time for exercise.

4 Parents must alter their habits, if they don't want to have a negative impact on their children's dietary behaviour.

5 With regard to children, the physical education at school as well as healthier menus is a practical solution to losing weight.

6 The fundamental purpose of competitive sports is to provide athletes with a platform to compete with each other and prove their sporting prowess.

4.2

1 slightly lower	2 compared to	3 a difference
4 the same	5 saw a similar figure	

Unit 4 Media and Advertising

Listening

1.1

Traditional media	New media
television, radio, newspaper, magazine, film	blog, Internet, e-mail, smartphone, podcast

1.2

1 captured	2 forecast / forecasted	3 promote
4 interrupt	5 grabbed	6 post

1.3

Pros	Cons
A, C, I, J	B, D, E, F, G

2.2

练习1

1 C 2 B 3 C 4 A 5 A

6 C 7 A 8 C 9 B 10 A

练习2

Presenter: Well, this is a 'colourful' way to start today's episode of *The Daily Show*. What are you going to talk about this time?

Emma: Thanks, Adrian. Yes, well, today, I'd think about two ways in which colour plays a very important part in our life. Those things are food and fashion. So, let's begin by looking at food and more specifically, food colouring. Some people also call it 'artificial colour'. In 1938 the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act was passed to give food colouring additives numbers. For example, amaranth was renamed FD&C Red No. Two...

练习3

1 anyone	2 for example	3 I
4 So	5 website	6 People

3.2

练习1

1 B 2 A 3 C 4 C

练习2

1 A 2 C 3 B 4 C 5 B

4.1

1 Power Station	2 America	3 Mr Edward
4 Apart	5 Nothing	6 September

4.2

1 Jimmy	2 Germany	3 IBM
4 12 June	5 Twenty-four / 24	6 Talent

4.3

1 B 2 A 3 C 4 B 5 C

4.4

1 B 2 C 3 A 4 C 5 C

Reading

1.1

1 E 2 D 3 A 4 C 5 B

1.2

1 stimulate	2 granted	3 sponsored
4 wins out	5 release	

1.3

1 D 2 A 3 C 4 B

1.4

略

2

任务1

1

第二段: quote; For me

第三段: To be frank; think; hope

第五段: regard

第六段: should; felt; are supposed to

第八段: argue

2

1) B 2) A 3) A 4) B

3 D

任务2

1 √ 2 √ 3 × 4 √

3

任务1

1 略

2

1) NOT GIVEN	2) FALSE
3) NOT GIVEN	4) FALSE

任务2

1

A 第一段第一句

B 第一段第三句

C 第三段第二句

D 第四段最后一句

E 第六段第四句和第五句

2

1) FALSE　2) TRUE　3) NOT GIVEN

4) TRUE　5) NOT GIVEN

4

1 TRUE　2 TRUE　3 NOT GIVEN　4 TRUE

5 FALSE　6 FALSE　7 NOT GIVEN　8 FALSE

Speaking

1.1

1 documentary　2 soap opera　3 international news

4 talk show

1.2

1 C　2 D　3 B　4 A　5 E

2.1

练习1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 The new version of the interview audio is clearer than the old one. 新版本的采访音频比旧版本清晰。

2 The model is becoming more adorable. 这个模特变得更讨人喜爱了。

3 The richer your product presentation is, the better it is. 你的产品介绍越丰富越好。

练习2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

答题思路：可以选取不同的媒体形式发表观点，从它们的历史、成本、流通形式、受众、即时性等方面进行比较，合理使用到形容词的比较级和最高级形式。

With the innovation of technology, we have entered an era with various methods of communication such as newspapers, radios, videos, social networks, televisions, the Internet, mobile phones and so on. Among these methods, the newspaper is probably the most traditional carrier for people to receive information. It is written in formal language and only can carry out verbal and image information, so it seems to be less popular among the current readers. In contrast, the social network is one of the most popular platforms that we use to communicate today. It can offer us a quicker access to the things we want to know within only a click. That is more convenient.

3.1

略

3.2

略

4.1

1 drama　2 usually　3 snacks

4 actors　5 talented　6 interesting

4.2

略

Writing

1.1

1 comment　2 online　3 opinion

4 understand　5 criticise / criticize　6 accurate

7 print　8 thrive

1.2

1 acquire information　2 keep in touch with　3 online

4 a laptop or computer　5 Celebrities

2.1

1 objective and balanced reports

2 entertainment news

3 advertising

4 brand preference and loyalty

5 criminal reports

2.2

1 Various media forms help news circulate faster.

2 Many customers find it hard to refuse the temptation of advertising.

3 Advertising makes people aware of the new products available in the market.

4 New media platforms allow viewers to post their comments and opinions.

5 The government should impose strict laws on fake ads targeting children.

6 Celebrities can make the ideas of non-profit organisations noticed by more people.

7 Public figures can encourage their fans to do good deeds or achieve something in life.

8 Apple presents itself as a brand leader in mobile phone and computer device technology.

2.3

1 Apart from　2 such as　3 regardless of

4 to some extent　5 No matter

3.1

1 idea　2 explanation

3 further explanation　4 additional information

5 conclusion　6 idea

7 explanation　8 further explanation

9 additional information　10 conclusion

3.2

1 a difference　2 respectively　3 occupied

4 except for　5 experienced a decrease　6 In terms of

7 saw a noticeable fall　8 shrank

4.1

1 Advertising enhances the power of the dominant firms in product fields.

2 At a time of unprecedented challenges for all print media, many publications have rushed to embrace social networking technologies.

3 Television programmes enable children to know different countries and various cultures in the world.

4 A successful educational project can inspire children to try

something new with courage.

5 Watching television may decrease students' time in developing personal interests and studying.

6 With his eyes glued to the computer screen, he had no time to interact with people around him.

4.2

1 made up　2 standing at　3 In contrast
4 apart from　5 upward trends　6 rose sharply
7 four times higher　8 a significant increase

Unit 5 Science and Technology

Listening

1.1

1 B　2 B　3 C　4 C　5 B　6 A

1.2

1 E　2 C　3 B　4 D　5 A

1.3

1 B　2 D　3 E

2.3

练习1

略

练习2

1 A　2 C　3 A　4 C　5 B　6 B

练习3

略

练习4

1 Well　2 actually　3 Then　4 so that
5 first　6 absolutely　7 wasn't　8 vital

3.2

练习1

1&2 *IN EITHER ORDER* B, D　3&4 *IN EITHER ORDER* A, C
5&6 *IN EITHER ORDER* D, E

练习2

1–3 *IN ANY ORDER* B, C, E　4&5 *IN EITHER ORDER* C, D
6&7 *IN EITHER ORDER* C, E

4.1

略

4.2

1–3 *IN ANY ORDER* A, D, E　4&5 *IN EITHER ORDER* A, C
6&7 *IN EITHER ORDER* A, C

4.3

略

4.4

1 C
2 B
3–5 *IN ANY ORDER* A, C, E

Reading

1.1

1 E　2 D　3 B　4 A　5 C

1.2

1 robot　2 engine　3 satellite
4 radio　5 aeroplane　6 microscope

1.3

1 D　2 C　3 A　4 B

1.4

略

2

任务1

1 B

2

1) E　2) A　3) B　4) D　5) C

任务2

1 D
2 A
3 第五段第二、三句

3

任务1

1

1) 第一段第二句　2) 第二段第二句
3) 第四段第三句　4) 第六段

2

1) YES　2) NO
3) NOT GIVEN　4) YES

任务2

1

1) √　2) ×　3) ×　4) √

2

1) NO　2) YES　3) YES
4) NO　5) NOT GIVEN

4

1 YES　2 NO　3 YES　4 NO
5 NO　6 NOT GIVEN

Speaking

1.1

1 laptop　2 robot　3 smartphone　4 Wi-Fi connection

1.2

略

2.1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

答题思路：可以就某个科技领域的话题进行说明介绍，在阐述细节的过程中使用插入语来补充说明，使内容的逻辑更加完整准确。

Science, particularly natural science, covers a wide range of subjects. Among these subjects showed in the pictures, computer science is the one that attracts me most. As we all know, AI, short for artificial intelligence, is a heated topic recently, and many scientists are working hard to make robots available in everyone's house. I believe it is an area worth investing in.

3.1

略

3.2

略

4.1

略

4.2

略

Writing

1.1

1 innovation　2 phone　3 attention
4 information　5 technology　6 message
7 change　8 sociable

1.2

1 phone　2 message　3 innovation
4 attention　5 information　6 technology

2.1

1 household appliances　2 text message
3 posting short videos on the Internet　4 literacy levels
5 a mobile phone　6 online chatting

2.2

1 主谓宾补　宾语补足语　2 主谓双宾　谓语
3 主系表　表语　4 主谓　主语
5 主谓宾　宾语

2.3

1 A　2 B　3 C, D

3.1

1 idea　2 explanation　3 example
4 result of the example　5 conclusion　6 idea
7 explanation　8 further explanation
9 detail　10 conclusion

3.2

1 the largest percentage of　2 was 2% lower than
3 had the same percentage　4 declined to
5 a further decrease　6 reaching

4.1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 Staring at the computer or the mobile phone for hours and watching TV really close may weaken your eyesight.
2 Technological giants collect and process customer data to improve customer experience.
3 Without effective restrictions on Internet usage, millions of young people are exposed potentially to criminals.
4 In the age of information explosion, it is wealth itself to sort through masses of sources and sort out what you need.
5 These advanced technical tools have helped us eliminate the barriers of distance in effective communication.
6 Technological innovations are an important driving force for economic development and social progress.

4.2

1 whereas　2 preferred　3 Moreover
4 By contrast　5 made online conversation

IELTS
Course

初级上

雅思标准教程

“雅思标准教程”为满足广大雅思考生的实际需求而编写。本教程在充分研究雅思考试所考查的基本能力和评分标准的基础上，从听、说、读、写四个维度培养考生的英语运用技能，强化考生在雅思考试中的得分实力。本教程分为四个级别，每个级别包括上下两册。预备级适合雅思目标分数为4.5~5.0分的考生使用，初级适合目标分数为5.0~5.5分的考生使用，中级适合目标分数为5.5~6.5分的考生使用，高级适合目标分数为6.5~7.5分的考生使用。

主要特色：

- 紧密结合雅思考试的考查重点和评分标准
- 注重英语能力的培养
- 讲解雅思考试各科目必备知识点和各题型解题技巧
- 练习题、模拟题丰富且符合雅思考试特点
- 阶段性复习有效巩固和强化知识点



登录网址 https://zengzhi.fltrp.com/dzyyxx/，
点击页面左侧“资源下载”栏目中的本书书名，即可看到音频的免费下载链接。

责任编辑：许圆圆　　责任校对：王晶　　封面设计：李高

记载人类文明
沟通世界文化
www.fltrp.com

ISBN 978-7-5213-4134-8

定价：56.00元